

Forest Management Planning Manual

May 2023

Policy Division
Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch
Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry

Forest Management Planning Manual

Prepared under the Authority of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994

May 2024

Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry

© 2024 King's Printer for Ontario
Printed in Ontario, Canada

Publications and price lists are available from this office:
Service Ontario Publications

300 Water Street
Peterborough, ON, K9J 8M5
1-800-668-9938
www.serviceontario.ca/publications

Telephone inquiries should be directed to the Service Ontario Contact Centre:

General Inquiry 1-800-668-9938
Renseignements en Français 1-800-667-1840
Fax (705) 755-1677

Cette publication hautement spécialisée {Forest Management Planning Manual} n'est disponible qu'en anglais conformément au Règlement 671/92, selon lequel il n'est pas obligatoire de la traduire en vertu de la Loi sur les services en français. Pour obtenir des renseignements en français, veuillez communiquer avec le ministère des Richesses naturelles et des Forêts au 1-800-667-1840.

Visit Ontario's Forests website at:
<https://www.ontario.ca/page/forestry>

Visit the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry website at:
<https://www.ontario.ca/page/ministry-natural-resources-and-forestry>

How to cite this manual:

OMNRF. May 2024. Forest Management Planning Manual, Toronto. King's Printer for Ontario. 318 pp

Foreword

Land acknowledgement

We would like to acknowledge the long history of the lands referenced in the Forest Management Planning Manual. The forests currently managed by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (the Ministry) were cared for by Indigenous peoples long before the inception of Canada, Ontario, or the Ministry. They continue to be taken care of by Indigenous peoples today.

These forests have witnessed an evolution. They hold stories of forest stewardship, treaty-making, the displacement of Indigenous peoples from their territories, and other events throughout our complicated past. We are thankful for the leadership role that Indigenous peoples have played in land stewardship through time, despite facing immense barriers to engaging in these practices.

We would like to recognize that some of the geographic boundaries used in this document may not resonate with all readers. We understand that the borders of Ontario and its management units may not align with some readers' conceptualizations of the landscape's boundaries. Although the Ministry uses this system of bounds to separate the managed forest, we appreciate that it is not the sole or principal view of how the landscape is divided.

As a Ministry, we have a responsibility for the sustainable management of the forest, and we recognize the need to work alongside First Nation and Métis partners to achieve this collective goal for these shared lands, for generations to come.

The policy framework for sustainable forests

The overall context for forest management in Ontario is the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests. The framework sets broad direction for forest policy and makes forest sustainability the primary objective of forest management. It helps to address climate change by ensuring Ontario's forests contribute positively to the global environment. This contribution is made through the application of the principles for sustaining forests.

Overview of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*

The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994* (CFSA) came into effect on April 1, 1995. The Act is enabling legislation, and provides for the regulation of forest planning, information, operations, licensing, trust funds, processing facilities, remedies and enforcement, and transitional provisions. The CFSA is designed to allow for the management of all forest-based values, while providing for the sustainability of Crown forests. The CFSA defines

sustainability as long-term Crown forest health, and reflects the broad direction set out in the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests.

A manual approach to implementation of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*

The CFSA requires the provision of four manuals to guide various aspects of forest management in Ontario. These manuals are prepared in accordance with Section 68 of the Act and are regulated in accordance with Section 69(1) 29:

1. The Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM);
2. The Forest Information Manual (FIM);
3. The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM); and
4. The Scaling Manual (SM).

The FMPM is the pivotal document that provides direction for all aspects of forest management planning for forests in Ontario within management units designated under the CFSA, with the exception of the southern Ontario management unit.

In accordance with the CFSA, forest sustainability will be determined in accordance with the approach described in the FMPM. The approach requires the identification of measurable indicators in order to assess the effectiveness of activities in achieving management objectives and to assess the sustainability of the forest for the management unit. For a Forest Management Plan (FMP), the determination of sustainability will be a conclusion that the FMP provides for the long-term forest health on the management unit, and has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values. Management unit annual reports require the monitoring and evaluation of future forest conditions to compare with planned outcomes, which provide a means for continual refinement, redevelopment and improvement of forest management activities.

The FIM describes the information requirements to support forest management. The FIM directs the sharing and exchange of forest-related information between the Ministry and Ontario's forest industry.

The FOSM sets out the over-arching principles and accepted approaches for forest management, the standards for forest operations and silvicultural practices, the minimum qualifications for forestry workers, and the procedures for the evaluation of forest management in Ontario.

The SM contains instructions and standards for the measurement of forest resources, provides instructions for the authorized movement of forest resources and sets out the requirements for conducting scaling audits.

Manual revision

The four manuals are revised, improved, and updated based on experiences in using the manuals, and as new information becomes available. Revisions to the manuals will be made in accordance with the CFSA regulation.

Forest management

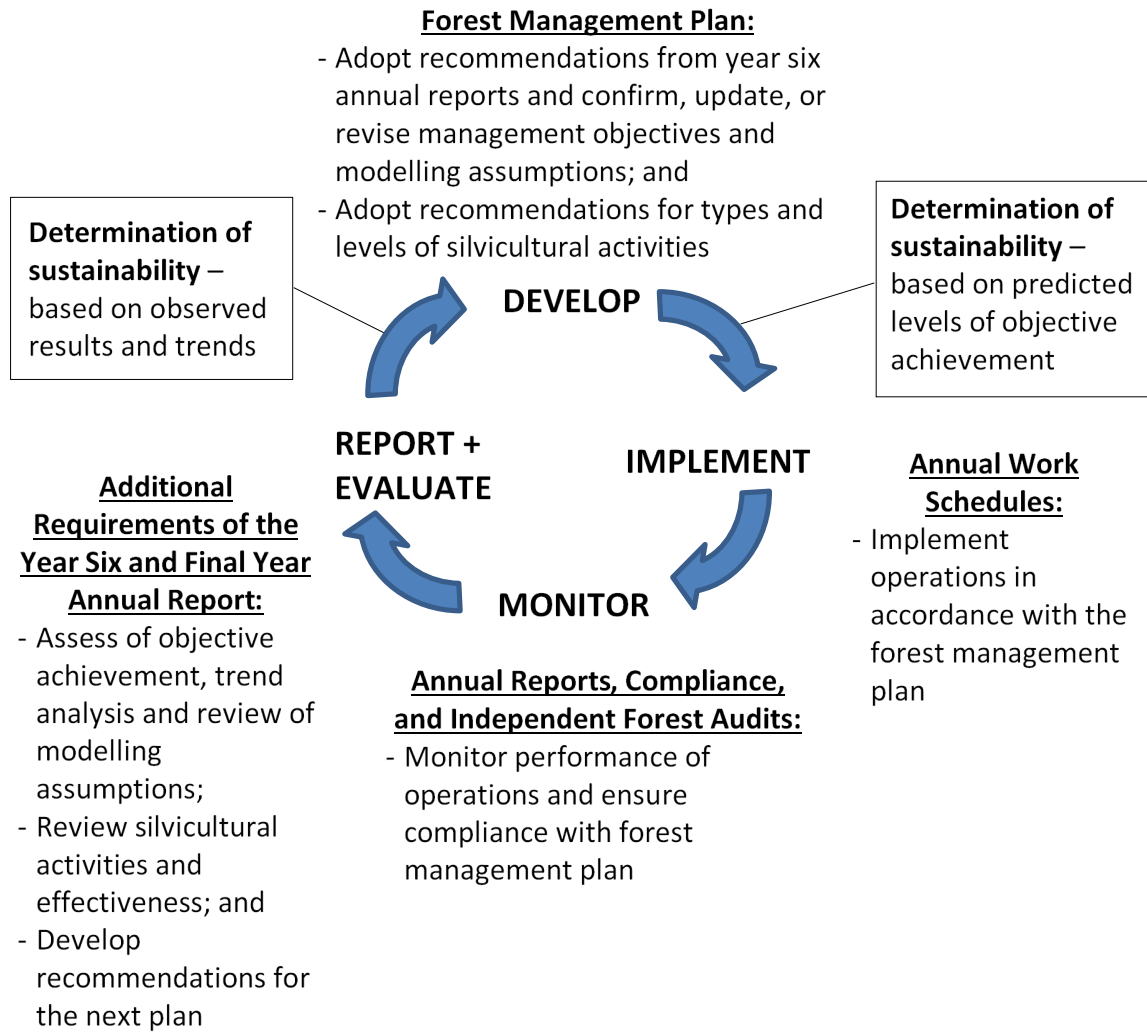
Forest Management is conducted in an adaptive management cycle. A FMP is prepared by a plan author, who is assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team. The plan author must be a registered professional forester, who certifies that the FMP has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM. The FMP is implemented as scheduled in the annual work schedule and as reported in the annual report. Following year six, the implementation of the FMP to date is assessed and a determination is made as to whether the implementation of the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the forest and recommendations for future planning are provided. The next FMP is prepared in consideration of recommendations from the year six annual report; changes to the forest condition; updates to science and policy; and specific efforts to confirm, update, or revise management objectives and practices.

The Ministry and forest licensees who prepare and implement forest management plans are highly trained and hold credentials (i.e., certification and professional licenses). To enable a more competitive and efficient forest management planning process the Ministry and the forest industry must be risk-tolerant, results oriented, and recognize professional accountability.

The Ministry will ensure that professional and technical training programs related to the preparation and implementation of forest management plans are maintained and delivered so that the knowledge of persons involved in the application of this manual is current.

Figure 1 provides an overview of the adaptive management cycle as it pertains to the provision of forest sustainability in FMPs.

Figure 1: Adaptive management cycle



Climate change considerations

Ontario recognizes climate change as a challenge requiring government action. *Preserving and Protecting our Environment for Future Generations: A Made-in-Ontario Environment Plan* commits the province to contributing to global greenhouse gas emission reductions by preparing for a changing climate and continuing research to help understand climate change and its effect on the environment.

Ontario's efforts to address climate change are focused on adaptation and mitigation. Adaptation involves practices and behaviours to reduce vulnerabilities and risks associated with climate change. Mitigation refers to efforts to reduce or prevent emissions of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere or increase sequestration.

Healthy, resilient forests are best able to resist and adapt to climate change impacts. Ontario's forest policy framework has been designed to ensure a healthy, and therefore, resilient forest. At the foundation of that framework is the CFSA that directs the conservation of large, healthy, diverse and productive forests and their associated ecological processes and biological diversity. Building from this foundation, the forest management guides - which are required to be used by each planning team when they develop a FMP - describe in more detail the objectives (e.g., diverse range of forest types and ages) and practices (e.g., conserve soil and water resources) that are consistent with a healthy, resilient forest. This FMPM then describes the process and standards used to incorporate Ontario's forest policy framework into local decision making. All of this direction provides the flexibility to adapt local forest management actions to both resist and respond to potential climate change impacts. Regular monitoring, including that specified in this FMPM, provides the necessary feedback to evaluate the effectiveness of local decisions and Ontario's overall forest policy framework in achieving healthy and resilient forests.

In addition to the monitoring specified in the FMPM, the Ministry undertakes a program of effectiveness monitoring for the forest management guides to ensure that the direction in the guides is effective. The Ministry also considers the latest science during the reviews of forest management guides, including climate change research. Ontario's State of Natural Resources reporting supports the government's efforts towards climate change mitigation through the sharing of information and reporting on forest carbon balances.

In addition, the way the forests are managed can influence the amount of carbon that is released into the atmosphere and stored in trees and harvested wood products – i.e. mitigation. Sustainable forest management, supported by the framework described in this FMPM, can help mitigate climate change.

The Ministry continues to improve the understanding of climate change and its effect on the forests working with other agencies and partners on research studies and sharing information. The forest policy framework will be adapted to reflect this improved understanding over time to ensure the long-term health of Ontario's forests.

Introduction

The FMPM prescribes the requirements for Ontario's forest management planning system including a detailed description of the planning process and the products. The forest management planning cycle, established by the manual, consists of planning, implementation, monitoring and reporting. The reporting component of this planning system includes evaluation of results and recommendations to be incorporated into a subsequent planning process to complete the cycle.

The FMPM provides direction based on the legislative requirements of the CFSA and applies to designated management units, with the exception of the southern Ontario management unit.

The FMPM focuses on the delivery of the forest management component of higher-order provincial and regional land use and resource management policies and strategies and their successors including the Ministry's:

- Strategic Plan 2020-2025: Naturally Resourceful;
- Statement of Environmental Values;
- Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests;
- Sustainable Growth: Ontario's Forest Sector Strategy; and
- Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas.

These policies and strategies, along with other local strategies, provide the overall context for the preparation of FMPs, including the determination of forest sustainability.

First Nation and Métis communities have unique rights and interests from other people in Ontario. These may include Aboriginal and treaty rights, recognized and affirmed in section 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982* and interests as peoples with distinct cultures, histories, languages, perspectives, needs, and aspirations.

The FMPM describes the approach for working with First Nation and Métis communities to support their involvement in the forest management planning process in a manner that respects Aboriginal and treaty rights, and that assists the Crown in addressing its duty to consult obligations, where triggered.

The FMPM is intended to be implemented in a manner that provides protection for species at risk and their habitats. FMPs are developed in accordance with the FMPM and approved forest management guides, which provide direction for species at risk. These forest management guides use a nested coarse and fine filter approach to conserve biodiversity (including species at risk).

Coarse filter direction is designed to create a mosaic of ecosystem conditions that approximate those likely to be created by natural disturbance processes such as wildfire, insects, and wind to sustain large well-distributed populations of most plants and animals.

The fine filter is a species-specific approach that acknowledges that the requirements of some species may not be addressed by the coarse filter alone. Fine filter direction may be deemed necessary when species require the habitat components created by the coarse filter direction in very specific patterns (e.g., caribou, moose, deer) or when nonhabitat-related effects of forest operations must be mitigated (e.g., disturbance of nesting birds by the noise of operations).

When direction for a species at risk is not contained within a current forest management guide (e.g., species received protection or additional protection under the *Endangered Species Act 2007* after the guide was approved), the FMPM requires that direction be developed by the planning team with the assistance of Ministry staff with expertise in species at risk. This direction gets included in the FMP that applies to the management unit where the species is present.

The Ministry maintains a research program that focuses on evaluating the effectiveness of direction in forest management guides (referred to as Effectiveness Monitoring). Results of this research are considered during the review and revision of forest management guides, completing the adaptive management cycle.

The geographic basis for a FMP is a management unit. Management units provide for the effective and efficient administration and delivery of forest management planning, forest operations and forest resource licensing. FMPs will be prepared for each designated management unit, with the exception of the southern Ontario management unit, in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM. FMPs set out the forest management activities, including road access, timber harvest, forest renewal, and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection) that may occur on a management unit.

On designated management units which are not managed under a sustainable forest license, the Crown or another designated party is responsible for the preparation, implementation, monitoring and reporting of a FMP. For the purpose of this manual, the sustainable forest licensee is referenced as the party responsible for preparing, implementing, monitoring and reporting on FMPs. Where the requirements of this manual refer to the sustainable forest licensee, those requirements will apply to the Ministry or the party responsible for the preparation, implementation, monitoring and reporting of a FMP.

For the requirements of this manual, all approvals reference the Ministry regional director, regional resources manager, district manager and/or district supervisor.

FMPs are normally prepared for a ten-year period; however, they may be extended if there are remaining approved operations available. The planning process takes approximately 42 to 48 months (i.e., including the validation of the forest resource inventory) and results in a

FMP that contains the long-term management direction, locations of primary and branch road corridors, and details of forest operations.

The FMPM is divided into six major parts:

Part A Provides direction for the preparation of FMPs, and describes requirements for:

- preparing the FMP and planning of operations for the ten-year period;
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation; and
- public consultation.

Part B Provides the FMP content requirements, and describes requirements for:

- section headings and associated documentation;
- supplementary documentation; and
- FMP summary.

Part C Provides the planning requirements for plan amendments, contingency plans, plan extensions, and unscheduled and early plan renewals, and describes the requirements for:

- administrative, minor, and major amendments;
- contingency plans and plan extensions;
- early plan renewals;
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation; and
- public consultation.

Part D Provides direction for the scheduling of forest management operations on an annual basis, and describes requirements for:

- forest operations prescriptions;
- annual work schedules;
- prescribed burns;
- aerial herbicide and insecticide projects;
- insect pest management programs;
- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation; and
- public consultation

Part E Provides direction for management unit annual reports and evaluation of forest management operations, as well as the condition of the forest, at regular intervals, and describes:

- requirements for all management unit annual reports;
- additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports; and

- submission and review requirements.

Part F Provides management unit specific direction for individual management units (e.g., the Whitefeather Forest), and describes additional requirements for:

- First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning;
- development of the management direction for the FMP;
- planning of operations for the ten-year period;
- plan documentation; and
- management unit annual reports.

In addition to the Parts, the manual contains the following appendices:

- I. Primary roads supplementary documentation form
- II. Area of concern supplementary documentation form
- III. Operational standards for forestry aggregate pits
- IV. Operational Standards for Wood Storage Yards

The FMPM also contains a glossary of terms.

The FMPM is intended to be used by those involved in forest management planning including registered professional foresters, other related professionals, stakeholders, First Nation and Métis communities, and the public.

Each year, the Ministry will make available on the Ontario Government website a schedule that identifies FMPs currently in preparation or approved for implementation.

Under the provisions of the Environmental Bill of Rights, the Ministry will place a bulletin (i.e., for information purposes only) on the Environmental Registry each year to give notice on the preparation of specific FMPs. The Ministry's Notices Best Practices document may aid with the preparation of Environmental Registry notices, consistent with obligations under the Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993.

The Ministry will maintain information on the Ontario Government website on how to become involved in forest management planning.

Phase-in provisions for the application of this forest management planning manual

The cyclical nature of forest management planning dictates that it will be a number of years before all requirements of this FMPM can be fully implemented for all management units across the province. The requirements of this FMPM will apply upon the effective date of this manual, unless otherwise directed by the phase-in provisions included at the beginning of each Part of this manual.

French summary

Le *Manuel de planification de la gestion forestière* (MPGF) énonce les exigences du système de planification de la gestion forestière de l'Ontario, y compris une description détaillée du processus de planification et des produits. Le cycle de planification de la gestion forestière, établi dans le manuel, consiste à planifier, à mettre en œuvre, à surveiller et à produire des rapports. Le volet de production de rapports de ce système de planification comprend l'évaluation des résultats et des recommandations à intégrer à un prochain processus de planification afin de compléter le cycle.

Le MPGF fournit des directives fondées sur les exigences législatives de la *Loi de 1994 sur la durabilité des forêts de la Couronne* et s'applique aux unités de gestion désignées, à l'exception de l'unité de gestion du Sud de l'Ontario.

Le MPGF met l'accent sur l'exécution du volet concernant la gestion forestière inclus dans les politiques et les stratégies provinciales et régionales de gestion des ressources et d'utilisation du sol d'ordre élevé et leurs versions subséquentes. Ces politiques et stratégies, ainsi que d'autres stratégies locales, fournissent un contexte général pour la préparation des plans de gestion forestière, y compris la détermination de la durabilité de la forêt.

Les collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis ont des droits et des intérêts uniques par rapport aux autres habitants de l'Ontario. Ces droits et intérêts peuvent comprendre les droits des Autochtones et les droits issus de traités, tel que reconnus et confirmés dans l'article 35 de la *Loi constitutionnelle de 1982* et les intérêts en tant que peuples avec des cultures, des histoires, des langues et des aspirations distinctes.

Le MPGF décrit la démarche utilisée pour travailler avec les collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis afin de favoriser leur participation au processus de planification de la gestion forestière d'une façon qui respecte les droits des Autochtones et les droits issus de traités et qui aide la Couronne à s'acquitter de ses obligations de consulter lorsqu'elles sont déclenchées.

Le MPGF doit être mis en œuvre d'une manière qui assure la protection des espèces en péril et de leurs habitats. Les plans de gestion forestière sont élaborés conformément au MPGF et aux guides de gestion forestière approuvés, qui fournissent des directives en ce qui a trait aux espèces en péril.

La base géographique d'un plan de gestion forestière est une unité de gestion. Les plans de gestion forestière seront préparés pour chaque unité de gestion désignée, à l'exception de l'unité de gestion du Sud de l'Ontario, conformément aux exigences du MPGF. Les plans de gestion forestière déterminent les activités de gestion forestière, y compris l'accès routier, la récolte de bois d'œuvre et le renouvellement et le maintien de la forêt qui peuvent avoir lieu dans une unité de gestion.

Le MPGF est divisé en six parties principales :

La **Partie A** Fournit des directives à l'égard de la préparation des plans de gestion forestière et décrit les exigences concernant :

- la préparation du plan de gestion forestière et de la planification des opérations pour la période de dix ans;
- la consultation publique;
- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis.

La **Partie B** Prévoit des exigences quant au contenu du plan de gestion forestière et décrit les exigences concernant :

- les titres de section et la documentation connexe;
- la documentation supplémentaire;
- le résumé du plan de gestion forestière.

La **Partie C** Donne les exigences relatives à la planification des modifications du plan, des plans provisoires, des prolongations du plan, des renouvellements imprévus et anticipés, et décrit les exigences concernant :

- les modifications administratives, mineures et majeures et les modifications de l'orientation de gestion à long terme (OGLT);
- les plans provisoires et les prolongations des plans;
- les renouvellements anticipés du plan;
- la consultation publique;
- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis.

La **Partie D** Fournit des directives pour établir un calendrier des activités de gestion forestière sur une base annuelle et décrit les exigences concernant :

- les prescriptions en matière d'opérations forestières;
- les calendriers de travail annuels;
- les brûlages dirigés;
- les projets d'épandage d'herbicides et d'insecticide aériens;
- les programmes de gestion des insectes nuisibles;
- la consultation publique;
- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis.

La **Partie E** Fournit des directives concernant les rapports annuels des unités de gestion et l'évaluation des activités de gestion forestière, ainsi que l'état de la forêt, à intervalles réguliers, et décrit ce qui suit :

- les exigences à l'égard de tous les rapports annuels des unités de gestion;
- les exigences supplémentaires concernant les rapports annuels de la cinquième et de la dernière années;
- les exigences en matière de soumission et d'examen.

La **Partie F** Fournit des directives propres aux unités de gestion individuelles (p. ex., la forêt Whitefeather), et décrit les exigences additionnelles concernant :

- la participation et la consultation des collectivités des Premières Nations et des Métis à l'égard de la planification de la gestion forestière;
- l'élaboration de l'OGLT;
- la planification des opérations pour la période de dix ans;
- la documentation du plan;
- les rapports annuels de l'unité de gestion.

En plus des parties, le manuel contient les annexes suivantes :

- V. Une description des contextes social et économique
- VI. Un formulaire de documentation supplémentaire concernant les routes principales
- VII. Un formulaire de documentation supplémentaire sur les secteurs préoccupants
- VIII. Des normes opérationnelles concernant des carrières d'agrégats de foresterie
- IX. Des normes opérationnelles en ce qui a trait aux cours d'entreposage du bois

Le MPGF comprend également un glossaire de termes.

Le MPGF est rédigé pour les personnes qui participent à la planification de la gestion forestière, notamment les forestiers professionnels agréés, d'autres professionnels connexes, les parties intéressées et le public.

Table of contents

Part A – Forest management planning process	7
Phase-in provisions	7
1.0 Preparing the ten-year forest management plan	9
1.1 Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning.....	11
1.1.1 Introduction	11
1.1.1.1 Description of management responsibilities.....	11
1.1.2 Planning team	11
1.1.2.1 Terms of reference.....	13
1.1.2.2 Project plan	14
1.1.3 Local citizens’ committee.....	15
1.1.4 Resource stewardship agreements.....	15
1.1.5 Decision support systems	16
1.1.6 Progress checkpoints	17
1.1.7 Analysis package	18
1.1.8 Assembly and update of background information	19
1.1.8.1 Sources of direction	20
1.1.8.2 First Nation and Métis background information report.....	20
1.1.8.3 Provincial audits and reports	21
1.1.8.4 Forest operations and silviculture	21
1.1.8.5 Management unit annual reports.....	21
1.1.8.6 Planning inventory information.....	21
1.1.8.7 Fish and wildlife inventory information.....	22
1.1.8.8 Inventories and information for species at risk.....	22
1.1.8.9 Other resource inventories and information.....	23
1.1.8.10 Values information.....	23
1.1.8.11 Roads and water crossings inventory	24
Roads.....	24
Water crossings.....	25
1.1.8.12 Industrial wood requirements	26
1.1.8.13 Social and economic description	26
1.1.8.14 Historic forest condition	27
1.1.9 Development of a consultation approach with each First Nation and Métis community	28
1.1.10 Stage one – Invitation to participate	28
1.2 Preparing for stage two – Proposed management direction for the forest management plan.....	28
1.2.1 Introduction	28
1.2.2 Forest classification and current forest condition	29
1.2.2.1 Landscape guide forest units and plan forest units.....	29
Landscape guide forest units	29
Plan forest units	30
1.2.2.2 Management decision information	30

1.2.2.3 Forest landscape guide indicator classifications.....	31
1.2.2.4 Other forest classifications	31
1.2.3 Management considerations	31
1.2.4 Base model.....	32
1.2.4.1 Forest dynamics – Growth and yield	33
1.2.4.2 Forest dynamics–Natural forest succession	33
1.2.4.3 Forest dynamics – Forest disturbance	34
1.2.4.4 Silvicultural ground rules	34
1.2.4.5 Silvicultural options.....	35
1.2.5 Forest sustainability	36
1.2.5.1 Management objectives, indicators and timing of assessment	37
Social and economic objective indicators.....	38
Forest diversity objective indicators.....	39
Provision of forest cover – Habitat for animal life objective indicators (if applicable).....	40
Silviculture objective indicators.....	40
Ecological sustainability objective indicators	40
Spatial management zones.....	42
Desired forest and benefits meeting	43
Setting desired levels	43
Harvest eligibility criteria	44
1.2.5.2 Development of the proposed management direction and the preliminary determination of sustainability.....	45
Setting targets.....	45
Strategic planning	46
Tactical planning - Spatial harvest schedule.....	46
Objective assessment for strategic and tactical planning decisions	47
Social and economic assessment.....	48
Risk assessment	48
1.2.5.3 Preliminary determination of sustainability	49
1.2.6 Primary road corridors.....	49
1.2.7 Operational planning	51
1.2.7.1 Selection of planned harvest areas.....	52
1.2.7.2 Contingency area	53
1.2.7.3 Renewal and tending areas.....	54
1.2.7.4 Silvicultural trial areas.....	54
1.2.8 Completion of on-going harvest operations from previous plan	55
1.2.8.1 Bridging operations.....	55
1.2.8.2 Second-pass harvest operations.....	56
1.2.9 Prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending operations, and conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits	56
1.2.9.1 Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.....	56
Operational prescriptions and conditions from a forest management guide.....	57
Operational prescriptions and conditions from other planning exercises.....	58

Operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning team.....	58
1.2.9.2 Prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending areas.....	59
Silvicultural ground rules	59
Residual forest for planned clearcuts	60
1.2.9.3 Important ecological features and other operational standards and guidelines	61
Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits.....	61
Conditions on regular operations	61
1.2.10 Roads.....	62
1.2.10.1 Primary road corridors.....	63
1.2.10.2 Branch road corridors	64
1.2.10.3 Area of concern crossings.....	65
Primary and branch roads.....	65
1.2.10.4 Operational roads	66
1.2.10.5 Existing roads	68
Conditions on existing roads and landings	69
1.2.10.6 Forestry aggregate pits	70
Operational standards for forestry aggregate pits	71
Aggregate extraction areas.....	71
Conditions on forestry aggregate pits	71
1.2.10.7 Use management strategies.....	72
Road decommissioning.....	73
Primary and branch road transfers.....	74
1.2.10.8 Wood storage yards.....	75
1.2.11 Confirmation of draft proposed operations	75
1.2.12 Expenditures	76
1.2.13 Summary of the proposed management direction for the FMP	76
1.2.14 Stage two – Review of proposed management direction for the FMP	77
1.3 Preparing for stage three – Preparation, submission and review of the draft forest management plan.....	78
1.3.1 Introduction	78
1.3.2 Preparation of the draft forest management plan.....	78
1.3.3 Submission of the draft forest management plan.....	79
1.3.4 Preparation of the draft forest management plan summary.....	79
1.3.5 Availability of the draft forest management plan	79
1.3.6 Stage three – Review of the draft forest management plan.....	80
1.3.7 Ministry review of the draft forest management plan.....	80
1.3.7.1 Ministry’s list of required alterations	81
1.3.8 Determination of sustainability	82
1.4 Preparing for stage four – Revision and approval of the forest management plan	84
1.4.1 Introduction	84
1.4.2 Preparation of the forest management plan and forest management plan summary	84

1.4.3	Submission, review and approval of the forest management plan.....	85
1.4.4	Distribution of the ministry-approved forest management plan.....	85
1.4.5	Stage four – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan.....	86
1.5	Availability of the approved forest management plan.....	86
1.6	After action review for the preparation of the FMP	86
2.0	Public consultation.....	87
2.1	Introduction	87
2.2	Local citizens’ committee	87
2.2.1	Introduction	87
2.2.2	Purpose	87
2.2.3	Membership and organization.....	88
2.2.4	Terms of reference.....	89
2.2.5	Administration	90
2.2.6	Reports and records.....	91
2.2.7	Forest management plan documentation	92
2.3	Public consultation requirements.....	93
2.3.1	Introduction	93
2.3.2	General requirements.....	93
2.3.2.1	Public notices	93
	Additional information forums	95
	Supplemental notices	95
2.3.2.2	Planning team and local citizens’ committee communication.....	95
2.3.2.3	Responses to comments.....	96
2.3.2.4	French Language Services Act.....	96
2.3.3	Formal public consultation	97
2.3.3.1	Stage one – Invitation to participate	97
	Direct written notice requirements.....	97
	Information available.....	98
2.3.3.2	Stage two – Review of proposed management direction for the FMP	99
	Direct written notice requirements.....	99
	Information available.....	100
2.3.3.3	Stage three – Review of draft forest management plan	102
	Direct written notice requirements.....	102
	Information available.....	103
	Final list of required alterations.....	104
2.3.3.4	Stage four – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan.....	104
	Direct written notice requirements.....	104
	Information available.....	105
2.3.3.5	Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan.....	105
2.4	Issue resolution.....	105
2.4.1	Issue resolution process.....	105
2.4.1.1	Ministry district manager stage	107
2.4.1.2	Ministry regional director stage	110
3.0	First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.....	113

3.1	Introduction	113
3.1.1	First Nation and Métis communities	113
3.2	Planning team	114
3.3	Local citizens’ committee	115
3.4	Development of a customized consultation approach for forest management planning	115
3.5	Proceeding without an agreed upon customized consultation approach	117
3.5.1	Forest management plans	117
3.5.1.1	Consultation	118
	Stage one – Invitation to participate	118
	Preparation of the proposed management direction for the FMP	118
	Stage two – Review of proposed management direction for the FMP	118
	Stage three – Review of draft forest management plan	119
	Stage four – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan.....	119
3.6	Documentation	119
3.6.1	First Nation and Métis background information report	120
3.6.2	Social and economic description	121
3.6.3	Report on protection of identified First Nation and Métis values	121
3.6.4	Summary of First Nation and Métis involvement.....	122
4.0	Preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario’s far north	124
4.1	Community based forest management plans in Ontario’s far north	124
4.1.1	Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning.....	124
4.1.1.1	Introduction	124
4.1.1.2	Planning team	125
4.1.1.3	Terms of reference.....	126
	Submission, review and approval	126
4.1.1.4	Project plan	126
4.1.1.5	Assembly and update of background information	126
	Planning inventory information.....	127
	Indigenous knowledge	127
4.1.1.6	Stage one – Invitation to participate	127
4.1.2	Preparing for stage two – Review of draft forest management plan.....	128
4.1.2.1	Desired forest and benefits	128
4.1.2.2	Spatial management zones.....	128
4.1.2.3	Development of the proposed management direction for the FMP	129
	Planned harvest area	129
4.1.2.4	Application of the forest management guide for boreal landscapes.....	130
	Stand and site scale direction	130
	Landscape scale direction	131
4.1.3	Stage two – Review of the draft forest management plan	131
4.1.4	Ministry review of the draft forest management plan.....	131
4.1.5	Ministry’s list of required alterations	132

4.1.6	Preparing for stage three – Revision and approval of the forest management plan.....	132
4.1.7	Stage three – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan	132
4.2	Public consultation.....	133
4.2.1	Introduction	133
4.2.2	Formal public consultation	133
4.2.2.1	General requirements.....	133
4.2.2.2	Stage One – Invitation to participate.....	134
4.2.2.3	Stage two – Review of draft forest management plan.....	134
	Direct written notice requirements.....	134
	Information available.....	135
4.2.2.4	Stage three – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan	135
4.2.3	Availability of the approved forest management plan.....	135
4.3	First Nation community involvement and consultation.....	136
4.3.1	Introduction	136
4.3.2	First Nation communities.....	136
4.3.3	First Nation consultation.....	137
4.3.3.1	Role of local First Nation community	137
4.3.3.2	Planning team	137
4.3.3.3	Desired forest and benefits	137
4.3.3.3	Documentation	138

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure A-1:	Overview of schedule for preparation of a forest management plan	10
Figure A-2:	Overview of issue resolution stages.....	108

Part A – Forest management planning process

Part A of this manual describes the process for the preparation of a Forest Management Plan (FMP). Section 1.0 describes the requirements for preparing the 10-year FMP. Section 2.0 describes public consultation requirements for preparing a 10-year FMP. Section 3.0 describes the opportunities for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning. Section 4.0 describes the requirements for the preparation of community-based forest management plans to support local First Nation projects in Ontario's Far North.

Phase-in provisions

An aggregate pit specified in a forest management plan whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on or after December 10, 2009 may be operated in accordance with the operational requirements referred to in Part A, Section 1.2.10.6 and set out in Appendix III of this manual, provided the aggregate pit satisfies the criteria set out in Part A, Section 1.2.10.6. of this manual.

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2020 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) (2017).

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the FMPM (2017), except as follows:

- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules of the FMP may, at the discretion of the plan author, be prepared and conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit.
- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 and there has been a delay in the preparation of the proposed operations and draft forest management plan beyond the effective date of this manual, the forest management plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of the following sections of this FMPM
 - Part A, Section 1.3 through 1.6, to the extent reasonably possible;
 - Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation;
 - Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in Forest Management Planning

- For any request for issue resolution, that is received after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM), the requirements of Part A, Section 2.4 of this FMPM will apply.

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2022, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the FMPM (2017), except as follows:

- Part A, Sections 1.3 through 1.6 of this FMPM shall apply;
- The following sections of this FMPM shall apply to the extent reasonably possible:
 - Part A, Section 2.0 Public Consultation
 - Part A, Section 3.0 First Nation and Métis Community Involvement and Consultation in Forest Management Planning

Subject to the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM) and the phase in provisions for the guidance and direction set out in FOSM's associated policies and related technical documents, silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules, of the FMPs prepared on or after April 1 2022 may, at the discretion of the plan author, be prepared and conducted in accordance with the the previous approved FMP for the management unit.

Subject to the foregoing phase in provisions forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2023, will be prepared in accordance with this FMPM.

1.0 Preparing the ten-year forest management plan

A FMP will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry (hereafter referred to as ‘the Ministry’) or by an organization authorized by the Ministry. FMPs will normally be prepared every 10 years, for a 10-year period. A FMP will include the management direction for the management unit, including the planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal, and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection). There are four stages of consultation during the preparation of a FMP.

Planning efforts from current FMPs will be considered in the development of the new FMP. A FMP will be prepared utilizing a review of the current plan, **confirming, updating or revising the management direction as appropriate**, using the best available information (e.g., science, new forest management guides, management unit annual reports).

The preparation, review and approval of the 10-year FMP takes approximately 42 to 48 months (i.e., including the validation of the forest resource inventory and assembly of background information). The timetable for the preparation of a FMP, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-1.

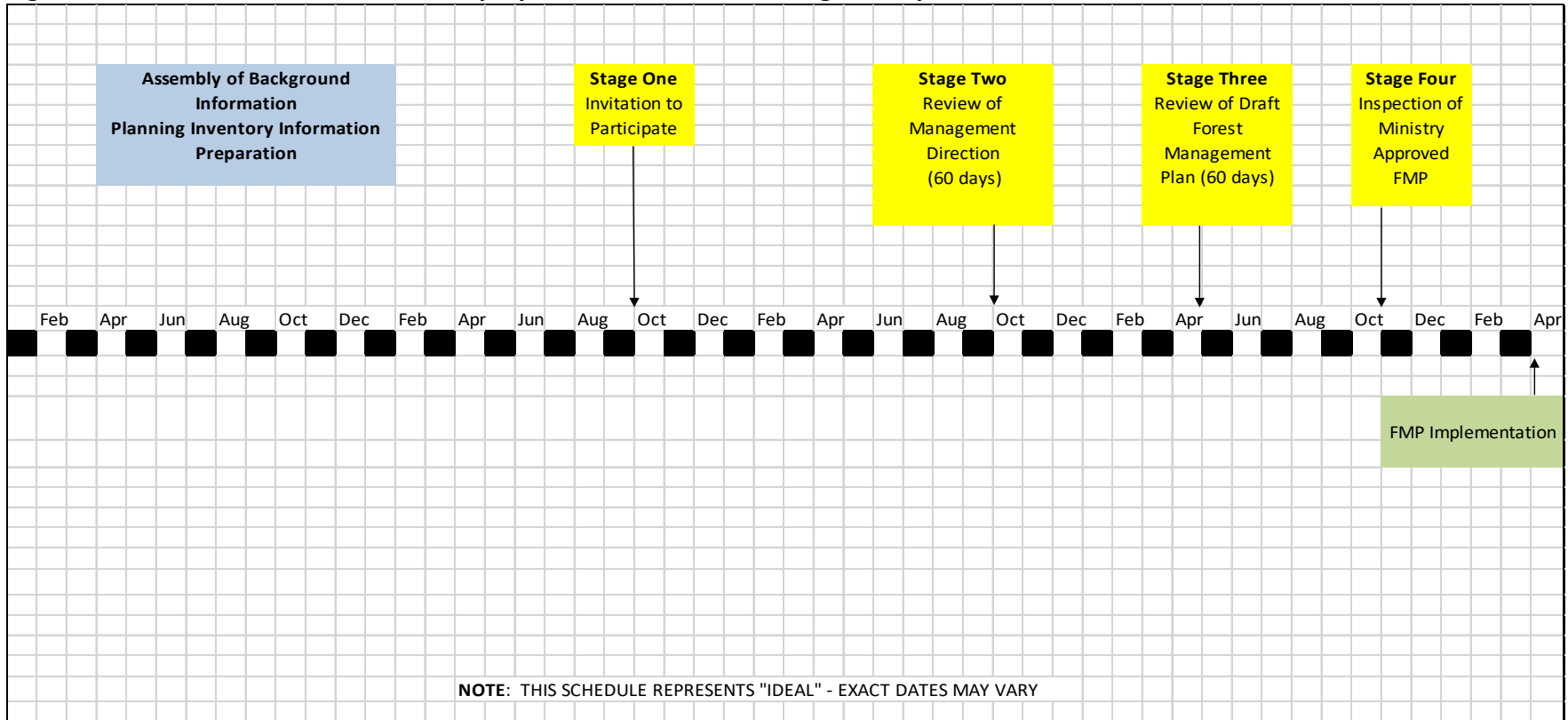
Section 1.1 describes the process to be followed and products that will be available for stage one of consultation.

Section 1.2 describes the process to be followed to develop the management direction for the FMP including the identification of a spatial harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years) and the areas of operations for access, harvest, renewal and tending for the 10-year period of the FMP. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage two of consultation.

Section 1.3 describes the requirements for preparing and submitting the draft FMP, and the requirements for the Ministry’s review. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for stage three of consultation.

Section 1.4 describes the process for plan revision and approval, and the products that will be available for stage four of consultation.

1 **Figure A-1: Overview of schedule for preparation of a forest management plan**



2

1.1 Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning

1.1.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information, in preparation for stage one of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.1).

Additional requirements regarding the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

1.1.1.1 Description of management responsibilities

A description of the management responsibilities for the management unit will be prepared. The description will include responsibilities of the Ministry, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies, if applicable.

1.1.2 Planning team

A FMP will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team and a local citizens' committee (LCC) (Part A, Section 2.2). In addition, advisors with a specialty in a particular subject area will play a role in providing advice and support during plan preparation. Task teams will be established to prepare plan components in accordance with the terms of reference and project plan for the FMP. Task team decisions will be communicated with the planning team to support the preparation of the FMP.

The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licenced under the *Professional Foresters Act, 2000*. For plans prepared by an organization such as a sustainable forest licensee, the organization will assign the plan author. If the FMP is prepared by the Ministry, the Ministry district manager will assign the plan author.

The Ministry district manager will appoint an interdisciplinary planning team, which is a working body, with all members participating in plan preparation. The team will normally include representatives from First Nation and Métis communities, individuals with expertise in forest management, information management, fish and wildlife, species at risk, biology, forest ecology, lands administration, parks and natural heritage, fire management, enforcement, and forest modeling and analysis. The level of participation of team members will vary depending on their particular area of expertise. Planning team members should be

familiar with the management unit. The planning team will include a registered professional forester employed by the Ministry.

The Ministry district manager will offer an opportunity for a representative of each First Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses, including established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights, may be affected by the preparation and implementation of the FMP, to participate on the planning team (Part A, Section 3.2).

The Ministry district manager will offer an opportunity for the LCC to nominate one of its members to participate on the planning team. In addition, when applicable and where possible, the Ministry district manager will invite a person(s) who collectively represents overlapping licensees and beneficiaries of Ministry wood supply commitments that do not have ownership in the company holding the sustainable forest licence on the management unit to participate on the planning team.

The Ministry district manager will appoint the chair of the planning team. The chair of the planning team ensures the FMP will be prepared in accordance with the terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The Ministry regional resources manager will appoint a project manager for the preparation of the FMP. The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team, will develop and maintain a project plan for the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2).

Representatives from the Ministry and other ministries may be invited to participate as advisors to the planning team and/or plan reviewers. This advisory role is available to any provincial government ministry or agency, including those agencies responsible for Indigenous affairs. The Ministry district manager will notify other government ministries or agencies to determine whether those organizations have specific interests that should be addressed in the FMP. If the ministries or agencies have concerns, they will be invited to participate on the planning team.

The Ministry regional resources manager, in consultation with the sustainable forest licensee, will establish a steering committee for the preparation of the FMP. The steering committee will include a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, a representative of the Ministry regional director, and district manager. The steering committee will monitor the preparation of the FMP and will resolve issues and disagreements among planning team members (e.g., establishment of local level management objectives and indicators) to ensure plan preparation remains in accordance with the project plan. The steering committee will seek input from First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team when resolving issues and disagreements among planning team members.

Climate change consideration

The planning team may consider climate change when consulting with other government ministries or agencies. Inviting advisors and reviewers with knowledge and experience of climate change is a helpful way to develop a FMP that aligns with current climate change policies and programs.

1.1.2.1 Terms of reference

The plan author, with assistance from the planning team, will develop the terms of reference for the preparation of the FMP. The terms of reference will contain:

- (a) the names and affiliations of the plan author, planning team members, steering committee members, the chair, the project manager, Ministry advisors, other advisors (e.g., staff from other government ministries, agencies and municipalities) and Ministry plan reviewers;
- (b) a description of the decision support system that will be used, and a discussion of the manner in which they will be used (Part A, Section 1.1.5);
- (c) the process for resolving disagreements between planning team members, including the involvement of the Ministry regional resources manager and/or the steering committee;
- (d) key plan preparation deliverables and identification of issues that may affect plan preparation; and
- (e) a communications plan, which outlines the timing for communications efforts, including French and Indigenous translation, mailings, information forums and printing.

The plan author and a senior official from the plan author's organization will sign the draft terms of reference to acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization on the planning team. The draft terms of reference will be submitted to the Ministry district manager and regional resources manager for review at least 30 days before issuing the first public notice. The Ministry will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within seven days. If changes are required, the plan author will make the changes and sign the terms of reference, obtain the signature from a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, and submit the final version to the Ministry district manager and regional resources manager. When the changes have been made to the satisfaction of the Ministry, the Ministry district manager and regional resources manager will sign and endorse the terms of reference, and submit it to the Ministry regional director for approval.

The terms of reference will be approved prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process.

1.1.2.2 Project plan

The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team, will develop the project plan for the preparation of the FMP.

The project plan will contain:

- (a) a schedule for plan preparation, including Ministry review and approval;
- (b) a schedule for endorsement of progress checkpoints, and identification of the ministry representative who will be responsible for confirmation of the required information to support plan deliverables (Part A, Section 1.1.6);
- (c) a schedule for confirmation of proposed operations, the proposed operations information to be confirmed, and the identification of who will be responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required information (Part A, Section 1.2.11);
- (d) a schedule for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and public consultation including any additional opportunities;
- (e) responsibilities and specific tasks of each planning team member, with deadlines for preparation. Planning team members will acknowledge their roles and responsibilities with their signatures on the project plan. Key tasks for the preparation of the FMP will be itemized, including identification of:
 - (i) who will be the liaison with First Nation and Métis communities;
 - (ii) who will be the liaison with resource-based tourist operators;
 - (iii) who will be the contact for the LCC;
 - (iv) who is responsible for notification of plan advisors;
 - (v) who will be responsible for updating the Ministry's mailing list, the preparation of public notices and the summary of public consultation;
 - (vi) who will be required to attend information forums;
 - (vii) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific products (e.g., the social and economic description) in the preparation of the FMP;
 - (viii) who will participate in the development of the management direction for the FMP, and tasks they will be responsible for;
 - (ix) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific sections of the FMP; and
 - (x) who will be responsible for preparing the *Statement of Environmental Values* consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0);
- (f) identification of a forest analysis and modeling task team, including members (e.g., staff from the sustainable forest licensee, regional analysts) and advisors to the task team (e.g., forest industry liaison officers, forest ecosystem science specialists), and their associated responsibilities (e.g., **confirm, update, or revise** forest classifications, forest model assumptions, and/or management objectives). Task team members will sign the project plan;

- (g) identification of other task teams (e.g., species at risk task team, Areas of Concern (AOC) task team, roads task team, operational task team etc.) and associated responsibilities. Task team members will sign the project plan;
- (h) identification of the responsibility for issuing the public notice for each stage of the formal public consultation process;
- (i) the roles and responsibilities of identified Ministry plan reviewers, including:
 - (i) the designation of a coordinator for the list of required alterations identified by the regional resources manager;
 - (ii) the responsibility to ensure that required alterations are consistent with the requirements of the FMPM and/or the FIM; and
 - (iii) the responsibility to acknowledge planning team decisions and previous required alterations identified by other Ministry reviewers.
- (j) the roles and responsibilities of Ministry plan advisors (e.g., forest industry liaison officers) in the preparation (e.g., confirm information to support progress checkpoints) and review of specific portions of the draft FMP.

Throughout plan preparation, the project plan will be updated to reflect changes to the preparation schedule, and changes in planning team membership and responsibilities.

1.1.3 Local citizens' committee

A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team during the preparation of the FMP. Normally, the committee will already be in place. The committee may be established for one FMP, or it may be a Ministry district committee established to assist in the preparation of FMPs for all management units in the district. The Ministry district manager may establish multiple LCCs or sub-committees for a management unit. The role of the LCC in the preparation and implementation of the FMP is described in detail in Part A, Section 2.2.

The Ministry district manager will review the membership of the LCC and fill any vacancies six months prior to commencing the formal consultation process for the preparation of a new FMP. The review of the membership will ensure that a range and balance of interests is represented on the committee. New members will be appointed by the Ministry district manager. Part A, Section 3.3 describes the process for reviewing the First Nation and Métis community representation on the LCC.

The committee may nominate a representative to serve as a member of the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2). The LCC, with assistance from the Ministry, will prepare the terms of reference for the committee (Part A, Section 2.2.4).

1.1.4 Resource stewardship agreements

The *Tourism and Forestry Industry Memorandum of Understanding* is an agreement between the government, the tourism industry and the forest industry on the development of resource stewardship agreements and related matters.

To initiate the development of a potential resource stewardship agreement, the sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the preparation and implementation of the new FMP. An updated list of resource-based tourism operators, both those with facilities on the management unit and those without facilities who use the natural resources within the management unit, will be provided to the sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry responsible for tourism, culture and sport .

The Ministry's forest management guide relating to the protection of resource-based tourism values provides guidance for the development of specific proposals and prescriptions related to forest management activities in a resource stewardship agreement. The prescriptions developed in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review by First Nation and Métis communities, and the public during the preparation of the FMP.

The Ministry will ensure that the parties (i.e., resource-based tourism operators and forest industry) are aware of the opportunities for First Nation and Métis communities, and the public to review specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship agreement related to forest management activities.

1.1.5 Decision support systems

Decision support systems used in forest management planning are information systems that utilize strategic models, analysis tools, and databases in an interactive, analytical process, to support decision making. In forest management planning, the planning team uses decision support systems to facilitate the development of the management direction for the FMP.

Components (e.g., models or analysis tools) of the decision support system to be used for any of the following tasks will be approved by the director of the Ministry's Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch prior to inclusion in the terms of reference:

- (a) projection of forest conditions through time and space;
- (b) determination of the required types and levels of access, harvest, renewal, and tending activities;
- (c) determination of the planned harvest area;
- (d) completion of a risk assessment; and
- (e) assessment of sustainability.

The decision support system used in the development of the management direction for a FMP will be able to produce the required products and analysis, and:

- (a) be capable of tracking the entire forested and non-forested landbase of a management unit through time and space (e.g., location, area, shape, and neighbouring forest stands);
- (b) evaluate all forested areas, whether managed or other, for their contribution to forest diversity and wildlife habitat;
- (c) evaluate all managed forested areas for their contribution to timber production;
- (d) produce projections of forest structure and composition for a minimum of 160 years;
- (e) produce spatial harvest schedules for at least 40 years;
- (f) account for natural disturbance agents, such as forest fire, windthrow, and insects;
- (g) incorporate current and potential levels of silvicultural investments with consideration for their effectiveness;
- (h) be capable of representing shelterwood and uneven-aged silvicultural systems (if applicable to the management unit); and
- (i) be capable of representing alternative approaches in the development of the management direction for a FMP.

1.1.6 Progress checkpoints

Progress checkpoints are key steps in the development of the proposed management direction for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.2) and the preliminary determination of sustainability. Progress checkpoints are intended to ensure the preparation of specific strategic and tactical components of the FMP are proceeding as planned.

During the preparation of the FMP, the ministry must confirm that the information to support each checkpoint will enable the planning team to achieve plan deliverables. The forest analysis and modeling task team and advisors to the task team (e.g., forest industry liaison officers) will document their support for applicable checkpoint technical information (e.g., forest classifications, base model) in the analysis package. The Ministry regional resources manager will resolve any disagreements regarding the progress towards the completion of the required information.

The progress checkpoints are:

- (a) Checkpoint One: Planning Inventory Information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.6);
- (b) Checkpoint Two: Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2);
- (c) Checkpoint Three: Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4);

- (d) Checkpoint Four : Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1); and
- (e) Checkpoint Five: Regional Director Support for the Proposed Management Direction, Preliminary Determination of Sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3) and Proposed Operations (Part A, Section 1.2.6).

The satisfactory completion of the required technical information for checkpoints will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.7). The regional director support for the proposed management direction for the FMP, the preliminary determination of sustainability, and the proposed operations prior to stage two of consultation, will confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoint five.

The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints in the planning team terms of reference.

Progress checkpoints will not be revisited unless the Ministry regional resources manager determines revisions are necessary due to new, changed or corrected information that becomes available, which may significantly alter the strategic and tactical planning decisions in the FMP, and the preliminary determination of sustainability.

1.1.7 Analysis package

The analysis package is prepared solely to identify and summarize the technical collaborative analysis (e.g. modeling inputs and assumptions, base model) conducted by the forest analysis and modeling task team and identified plan advisors (e.g., forest industry liaison officers) in the development of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2). The analysis package is not intended to document all the modeling and analyses completed in the preparation of the FMP; rather the analysis package will summarize the modeling and analysis efforts that contributed to the development of the management direction for the FMP. The analysis package will document the forest analysis and modeling task team support of progress checkpoints (1) through (4) (Part A, Section 1.1.6).

The analysis package will be updated throughout the development of the FMP and will be completed to the satisfaction of the plan author and forest analysis and modeling task team, prior to checkpoint (5).

Completed components of the analysis package will not be revisited at each checkpoint unless the Ministry regional resources manager determines that revisions are necessary due to new, changed or corrected information that becomes available, which may significantly alter the FMP.

Planning team decisions made during the development of the FMP and associated rationale will be documented in the FMP text. The analysis package will summarize the technical analysis information (e.g., scoping runs, model results) and will support the planning

decisions identified in the FMP. The FMP will reference the sections of the analysis package that support those planning decisions.

The FIM will identify the information required to be included in the analysis package and the submission format.

Information in the analysis package may be used to support the preparation of enhanced management unit annual reports (Part E, Section 3.0), and future FMPs for the management unit.

1.1.8 Assembly and update of background information

The project manager, in consultation with the plan author and planning team, will coordinate the **review and confirmation, update, or revision** of the background information in the current FMP for use in the preparation of the new FMP. The background information that will be available may vary across the province, depending on the relevancy for the management unit.

The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation includes:

- (a) sources of direction;
- (b) the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (c) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for the Ministry;
- (d) forest management guides, including new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation;
- (e) the management unit annual report for the final year of implementation of the previous FMP, and management unit annual reports for the current FMP;
- (f) forest resources inventory;
- (g) fish and wildlife inventory information;
- (h) inventories and information for species at risk;
- (i) other resource inventories and information, including information on cultural heritage resource values, and mineral resource information;
- (j) updated values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10);
- (k) roads and road water crossing inventory;
- (l) information describing current industrial wood requirements;
- (m) a social and economic description; and
- (n) information on the historic forest condition.

1.1.8.1 Sources of direction

The Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994 (CFSA) provides legal direction for the management of Ontario's Crown forests.

The Ministry will ensure that documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making are available (i.e., hardcopy or digital format) to the planning team and the LCC at the outset of planning. Those sources of direction include:

- (a) the Ministry's provincial goals, objectives and policies for natural resource management, particularly those relevant to forest management, such as the Statement of Environmental Values for the Ministry, the Ministry's current corporate long-term strategic policy, Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests, Wildland Fire Management Strategy and the Ministry's resource management policies;
- (b) Land use direction contained in Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, or its successor;
- (c) the existing approved FMP for the management unit, with particular emphasis on the section that addresses management objectives;
- (d) all other approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., fisheries management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation interest) that are relevant to the management unit;
- (e) any applicable government response statement published under subsection 12.1 of the ESA, all applicable habitat regulations made under the ESA, and any relevant ESA policy direction;
- (f) independent forest audits, and action plans for the management unit;
- (g) wood supply information including: available harvest volume (supply), current and projected wood supply use, and planned and actual harvest levels; ;
- (h) where available, strategic business direction for forest-based businesses dependent on the management unit, in particular the forest industry;
- (i) the results of the negotiations between the Ministry and First Nation and Métis communities; and
- (j) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licences regarding resource use on the management unit).

1.1.8.2 First Nation and Métis background information report

Part A, Section 3.6.1 describes the requirements for the preparation of the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s).

1.1.8.3 Provincial audits and reports

Audits or reports prepared by or for the Ministry pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., State of Ontario's Natural Resources) are available on the Ontario Government website.

1.1.8.4 Forest operations and silviculture

The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual sets out a list of guidance and direction (e.g., forest management guides) to be referenced in the development of forest management strategies and prescriptions, and implementation of forest management activities.

The Ministry will prepare a list of guides that are applicable to the management unit. The list will contain the titles, the specific editions of the guides, and the internet site where the guides can be accessed.

Climate change consideration

Ontario's forest management guides are a key component of Ontario's sustainable forest management framework. They are used by forest management planning teams to prepare FMPs and implement forest management operations. Guides are tools used to achieve healthy sustainable forests and help the managed forests look and function like natural forest ecosystems. By managing forests sustainably, the vulnerability of the natural environment to the impacts of climate change can be reduced.

1.1.8.5 Management unit annual reports

The most recent management unit annual reports for the management unit will be available for use in the preparation of the FMP. The additional information (Part E, Section 3.0) from enhanced management unit annual reports will also be available. In particular, the conclusions and recommendations in the year six management unit annual report (e.g., the review of renewal and tending activities, review of assumptions in modeling) will provide information for confirming or changing the management direction for the FMP.

1.1.8.6 Planning inventory information

The planning inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest management planning, including forest modeling, habitat modeling and landscape analyses. The forest inventory contains updated forest resources inventory information (i.e., result of forest management activities and natural disturbances) and base data (e.g., ownership, transmission lines). The forecast depletion layer contains expected changes to the planning inventory based on anticipated harvest for the remainder of the current FMP. The detailed

technical requirements, responsibility and timing for preparation and submission of the forest inventory and forecast depletion layer are described in the FIM. Development of the forest inventory and forecast depletion layer will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

The forest portion of the management unit is the landbase used for decision-making in the FMP. For forest management planning purposes, the forest is categorized as areas managed for timber production and other areas. Other areas include national and provincial parks and conservation reserves, and areas that have been designated through legal or policy means, or a land use decision, as unavailable for timber production. The areas managed for timber production include all remaining forest lands. The FIM provides direction for summarizing land types within the management unit.

The total area of forest on the management unit can contribute to the achievement of non-timber objectives in the FMP. The planning team may consider provincial parks and conservation reserves on the management unit in the achievement of management objectives as forest inventory information for these areas is available.

Checkpoint one - Planning inventory information

This progress checkpoint will include information and products associated with the planning inventory.

1.1.8.7 Fish and wildlife inventory information

Fish and wildlife inventory information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. The values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10) is the source of site-specific information for the fish and wildlife species present on the management unit.

Fish and wildlife inventory information which will be available includes:

- (a) known fish and wildlife species on the management unit;
- (b) fish and wildlife species of local concern; and
- (c) the slope of shoreland areas.

Sources for fish inventory information include lake, stream and other aquatic habitat surveys. Sources for wildlife inventory information include population, range and habitat surveys.

1.1.8.8 Inventories and information for species at risk

Inventories and information for species at risk on the management unit will be available for use in planning. The Ministry's Natural Heritage Information Centre is the primary source of

information for species at risk. The values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10), is the source of site-specific information for the flora, fish and wildlife species present on the management unit. This information will contribute to the development of management objectives and the preparation of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

The species inventories and information which will be available include known sites of occurrence of flora, fish and wildlife species, and known sites of occurrence of their habitat.

Publication of information on some values may be detrimental to their conservation, in which case the information will not normally be publicly available.

1.1.8.9 Other resource inventories and information

Other resource inventories and information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values information, and the development of management objectives for the forest.

The other resource inventories and information which will be available include:

- (a) information on each park and protected area, including the name, designation (e.g., provincial park, conservation reserve), class (e.g., wilderness, recreation) and area (hectares);
- (b) cultural heritage resource values inventory information, including:
 - (i) known archaeological sites and cultural heritage landscapes;
 - (ii) First Nation and Métis values information; and
 - (iii) areas of archaeological potential; and
- (c) mineral resource information.

Mineral resource information are available from the Ministry responsible for Ontario's mineral sector.

1.1.8.10 Values information

The Ministry will provide values information for the management unit, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

Values information will be updated as information is assembled during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. The Ministry will update and provide the most current and relevant information available on values, including cultural heritage resource values, at each stage of public consultation. Information on values will generally be available to the public. When publication of the location of particular values information may be detrimental to

their conservation (e.g., classified values), this information will not be portrayed (FIM, Part B, Section 3.1.4).

The values information will be accompanied by text that includes:

- (a) a list of references to the sources of information in the database;
- (b) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and
- (c) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.

With regard to old growth forest values, all sites which contain confirmed old growth forest communities (e.g., red and white pine) will be identified and portrayed for the management unit in accordance with the FIM.

Resource-based tourism values will be provided by the Ministry to support the development of resource stewardship agreements (Part A, Section 1.1.4) and development of operational prescriptions and conditions to protect tourism values.

The most up-to-date values information will be maintained at the appropriate ministry office and will be available for First Nation and Métis community, and public viewing.

1.1.8.11 Roads and water crossings inventory

Roads

The existing roads inventory for the management unit will be **confirmed and/or updated** using the most up-to-date information available. For the purpose of a roads inventory, existing roads include all roads that:

- (a) fall within the *Public Lands Act*, 1990 (PLA), Section 48 definition of a road;
- (b) support or supported the hauling of timber as defined under the Scaling Manual;
- (c) are not impassable to licensed highway vehicular traffic due to:
 - (i) vegetation ingress;
 - (ii) deterioration of the roadbed; or
 - (iii) decommissioning activities that have returned the road to productive forest (i.e., established regeneration).

The existing roads inventory will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee and confirmed by the ministry. The existing roads inventory will be prepared in accordance with the FIM with consideration of use management strategies, status, and the assigned responsibility of roads and/or road networks in the current FMP.

For each road and/or road network, the Ministry and sustainable forest licensee will **review, and confirm, update or revise** the:

- (a) road status (i.e., existing);
- (b) road and/or road network identifier;
- (c) road class;
- (d) geographic location;
- (e) responsibility assignment for the road and/or road network; and
- (f) use management strategy.

Roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee will be differentiated in the inventory.

Use management strategies will be required for existing roads and/or road networks that are:

- (a) planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP;
- (b) the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee (e.g., maintenance and monitoring activities); **except** for any roads and/or road networks that have been reported as decommissioned or are not scheduled for use during the period of the FMP, or are a shared responsibility between the sustainable forest licensee and another resource user or party.

Existing roads that require a use management strategy, approved primary road corridors and access restrictions on roads will be portrayed.

Information products for the roads inventory will be submitted in accordance with the FIM.

Water crossings

The Ministry and sustainable forest licensee will **review, confirm, and update or revise** the water crossing inventory for the management unit, using the most up-to-date information available. The water crossing information will identify all known water crossings for existing roads.

Water crossings that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee will be differentiated in the inventory. Information products for the water crossing inventory will be submitted in accordance with the FIM.

1.1.8.12 Industrial wood requirements

Industrial wood requirements are wood supplies from the management unit required to support the operation of existing and proposed wood processing mills. Current industrial wood requirements refer to information provided by the Ministry to assist planning teams in the establishment of projected industrial wood requirements. The information takes into consideration supply agreements, commitments and wood supply offers, recognized utilization by facilities, business arrangements, and open market purchases.

The plan author and planning team will review the current industrial wood requirements provided to the planning team with a Ministry forest industry liaison officer to determine the projected industrial wood requirements needed to support existing and proposed wood processing mills. Determination of the projected industrial wood requirements will consider:

- (a) wood supply commitments, supply agreements, and offers;
- (b) forecast operating levels of existing and planned mills;
- (c) forecast volume demand by product group for existing and planned mills;
- (d) current and historic mill utilization; and
- (e) business arrangements;
- (f) open market volumes;
- (g) market conditions; and
- (h) anticipated construction or expansion of facilities.

The projected industrial wood requirements will contribute to the development of management objectives, and support the proposed management direction for the FMP.

The projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit will be documented in the FMP (Part B, Section 2.1.4.4).

1.1.8.13 Social and economic description

A social and economic description will be prepared for the management unit. The planning team will **review, and confirm, update or revise** the social and economic description from the current FMP.

The social and economic description will describe the social and economic characteristics of:

- (a) communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits (e.g., employment, municipal taxes) related to the forest industry or forest management activities;
- (b) forest resource-processing facilities and industrial wood requirements;
- (c) the forest sector and wood product users of the forest; and

- (d) non-industrial uses of the forest (i.e., recreation and tourism).

The description will be considered in balancing the achievement of management objectives and the determination of sustainability for the forest on the management unit.

Demographic profiles will be prepared for communities that derive substantial social and economic benefits related to the forest industry or forest management activities, and First Nation and Métis communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities. The profile for each community will contain the following:

- (a) population and labour force;
- (b) household characteristics;
- (c) household income;
- (d) educational accomplishment (education is also an indicator of community resilience);
- (e) labour force dependency ratios; and
- (f) sector employment.

The standardized demographic profile is derived from Statistics Canada census data (<http://www.statcan.ca>).

Municipal economic development officers and northern development officers from the Ministry responsible for Northern Development may provide, verify or update information for the social and economic description. First Nation and Métis communities, the sustainable forest licensee, and planning team advisors may also provide local level information or knowledge to further support the preparation of the demographic profiles for communities.

The complete demographic profiles will be included in the Supplementary Documentation of the FMP (Part B, Section 5.1).

1.1.8.14 Historic forest condition

The description of the historic forest condition will be used in the development of the management direction for the FMP. The historic forest condition will provide insight into the natural dynamics of the forest, the effects of past forest management, and the current forest composition. Historical management unit information will also be useful in understanding trends and changes in forest composition, and past use of forest resources from the management unit.

The planning team will **review, and confirm, update or revise** the summary of the historic forest condition. A revised summary of the history of the forest will be prepared if required.

The summary will include a discussion of how the historic forest condition, past human activities, developments and natural processes relate to the current forest condition, and the associated management implications.

A summary of the history of the forest on the management unit will address:

- (a) historical use of forest resources;
- (b) historical development of access;
- (c) historical distribution of forest harvest;
- (d) historical natural disturbances, including size and frequency information; and
- (e) changes to the forest, including:
 - (i) forest type, structure and composition;
 - (ii) forest landscape pattern;
 - (iii) forest productivity;
 - (iv) populations of flora and fauna;
 - (v) wildlife habitat; and
 - (vi) forest biodiversity.

1.1.9 Development of a consultation approach with each First Nation and Métis community

Part A, Section 3.0 describes the requirements to involve First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning.

1.1.10 Stage one – Invitation to participate

After the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.1.1 to 1.1.9 have been completed, the planning team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.1, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

1.2 Preparing for stage two – Proposed management direction for the forest management plan

1.2.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the development of the management direction for the FMP in preparation for stage two of public consultation. The information and products which are required to be available at the stage two information forum are described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.2.

The management direction for the FMP will be consistent with legislation and policy; consider direction in forest management guides; balance social, economic and environmental considerations; and provide for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit.

The planning team, in consultation with the forest analysis and modeling task team, will review the management direction in the current FMP, and **confirm, update, or revise** forest classifications, forest model assumptions, and/or management objectives. This approach will facilitate stability and consistency in management direction in successive FMPs.

In the development of the management direction for the FMP, the current forest condition is described to provide context for the identification of desired forest and benefits, and the establishment of management objectives and indicators. Through strategic analysis, the management direction will identify the levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities that will balance the achievement of management objectives. The plan author and the planning team will prepare a preliminary determination of sustainability that will examine whether the management direction provides for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit.

Additional requirements regarding the development of the management direction for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

1.2.2 Forest classification and current forest condition

Planning inventory information is updated with forest classification information to produce the base model, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The base model and landscape level information are used to describe the current forest condition and provide context for the identification of desired forest and benefits and management objectives.

The development of the forest classifications will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

Information related to management unit land summary will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.2.1 Landscape guide forest units and plan forest units

Landscape guide forest units

Landscape guide forest units play a role in the assessment of biodiversity, as directed by the Ministry's forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the

landscape scale, where they are used to assess regional specific prescriptive indicators. Consequently, landscape guide forest unit classifications must be able to align with prescriptive indicator classifications to ensure the landscape guide assessments and comparisons to ranges of natural variation are valid.

Landscape guide forest units will be described in the FMP. Landscape guide forest units criteria and parameters will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

Plan forest units

The plan forest unit provides the primary classification for assumptions regarding how the forest develops, through time and in response to treatment. Plan forest units are applied to the entire forest on the management unit.

Plan forest units may be divided into analysis units that refine the plan forest units to more accurately project forest development (e.g., modeling deterministic forest succession).

Plan forest units and, if applicable, analysis units will be described in the FMP. Forest units and analysis units criteria and parameters will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM. Plan forest units and any identified analysis units will be included in the base model.

The managed productive forest by plan forest unit will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

Where applicable, plan forest unit and/or analysis unit classifications may roll up to the landscape guide forest units to ensure the landscape guide assessments and comparisons to ranges of natural variation are valid.

1.2.2.2 Management decision information

Forest stands will be classified based on management decision information, such as yield, stage of management, and age (i.e., checkpoint two). Management decision information is provided in the base model in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.2.3 Forest landscape guide indicator classifications

Forest landscape guide indicators are used to describe the current forest composition, structure and pattern at the landscape level (i.e., current forest condition at plan start). Landscape guide indicator classifications that are used to describe the current forest condition are defined in the Ministry's approved forest management guide(s) relating to landscape pattern and structure.

The forest landscape guide indicators will be described in the FMP and portrayed in accordance with the FIM for use in the development of management objectives.

1.2.2.4 Other forest classifications

There may be other forest classifications to describe the current forest condition at plan start based on forest cover (e.g., habitat for wildlife species, habitat for forest-related species at risk). The requirement for other forest classifications will be determined by the planning team. If applicable, the planning team will consider direction in the Ministry's approved forest management guides related to the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape, and stand and site scales, and the plan forest units and/or analysis units when identifying other forest classifications. The forest classifications will be described in the FMP and portrayed in accordance with the FIM for use in the development of management objectives.

Checkpoint two – Support for the forest classification and current forest condition

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the forest classification and the current forest condition (Part A Section 1.2.2).

1.2.3 Management considerations

Management considerations are changes to the forest condition (e.g., large natural disturbance) or social, economic or environmental concerns that will be considered in the development of the management direction for the FMP.

Management considerations that may influence the development of the management direction include:

- (a) First Nation and Métis community interests or First Nation and Métis values information (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (b) major changes in landbase;
- (c) recent, large natural disturbances;

- (d) access to remote tourism areas;
- (e) species at risk;
- (f) shifts in markets or utilization;
- (g) other planning initiatives;
- (h) funding for silviculture;
- (i) potential for wildland fire within the wildland urban interface; and
- (j) climate change.

Management considerations are often identified through the implementation of the current FMP. Other sources of information about management considerations include new science, new policy direction, independent forest audits and the associated action plans for the management unit, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s), and submissions from the LCC and the general public.

1.2.4 Base model

The base model serves as the common starting point for the development of the management direction for the FMP. The base model will include assumptions related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use decisions), forest dynamics (e.g., forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team. Where information is available, the base model will also include area of concern reserves (i.e., prohibition of operations), to support management decisions.

The forest analysis and modeling task team and advisors to the task team (e.g., forest industry liaison officers) will **review, and confirm, update or revise** model assumptions from the current FMP. An analysis of past silviculture outcomes (i.e., establishment trends) will support the development of the silvicultural assumptions for the base model (i.e., post-harvest renewal transition rules). The existing model assumptions will be reviewed in consideration of the best available science and information, new legislation, regulation and policy, and changes to forest condition and landbase.

The plan author, with assistance from the forest analysis and modeling task team, will conduct sensitivity analysis to provide insight on how key model assumptions influence how the forest develops naturally, and in response to forest management. Sensitivity analysis involves the modification of model inputs and examination of model outputs to develop and confirm model assumptions. The results of the sensitivity analysis supports the assumptions used in the base model.

The development of the base model will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.4.1 Forest dynamics – Growth and yield

The combination of plan forest unit and/or analysis unit, and yield curve will create a category of forest type called a silvicultural stratum. Yield curves or growth projections will be developed for each plan forest unit and/or analysis unit to predict the development of the forest through time. Growth and yield information from the Ministry (i.e., provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield), applicable to the management unit, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections.

The yield curves or growth projections will:

- (a) be consistent with growth and yield models developed through the Ministry provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield;
- (b) be developed using relevant data, collected to approved data collection standards and accepted modeling principles;
- (c) be developed consistent with results of available performance information;
- (d) be validated with independent local data, when available;
- (e) be developed for silvicultural strata and/or each stand;
- (f) be developed by species to provide separate estimates for yield by broad size or product group;
- (g) be developed to represent current utilization standards, and will provide separate estimates for yield in addition to current utilization standards (e.g., undersized and defect);
- (h) be consistent with natural forest succession inputs and other assumptions (e.g., harvest eligibility); and
- (i) provide resolution of information required to support the analytical tools used in planning and the development of regeneration standards.

Growth models or yield models not consistent with those developed through the Ministry provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield will require a sensitivity analysis and be subject to review and approval prior to use in the base model. The review of growth models or yield models for statistical and sampling considerations will be coordinated by the Ministry provincially coordinated program related to growth and yield.

1.2.4.2 Forest dynamics–Natural forest succession

Natural forest succession includes the changes in stand composition that occur through time as a result of aging, break-up, recruitment, non-stand replacing natural disturbances, and changes in climate (e.g., changes in soil moisture and growing season length). Natural forest succession also represents the natural succession of non-forested land types to forest. Natural forest succession can be represented in analysis tools as a transition from one forest unit to another (e.g., succession rule), and/or a change in species composition over time.

To predict future forest conditions, succession assumptions will be developed for each silvicultural stratum applicable to the forest.

1.2.4.3 Forest dynamics – Forest disturbance

Forest disturbance information for the managed forest includes stand replacing natural disturbances under fire suppression and post-disturbance succession. The Ministry's forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale reflect expected rates of stand replacing natural disturbances (e.g., fire and insects). Landscape composition direction from the Ministry's forest management guide(s) that addresses the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale will be accounted for in the decision support system. Disturbances that are single-event or infrequent are reflected as they occur through inventory updates (e.g., windthrow).

1.2.4.4 Silvicultural ground rules

A silvicultural ground rule (SGR) identifies the current forest condition, silvicultural system, future forest condition at maturity (e.g., silvicultural stratum), development information, management standards, regeneration standards, and acceptable alternative harvest, renewal and tending treatments. SGRs identify regeneration standards for the assessment of establishment (at a time when composition can be determined). Establishment is the period between harvest and the completion of silvicultural treatments to establish the new cohort of trees. SGRs for each silvicultural stratum will be developed for the management unit and will form the basis of the silvicultural options in the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The recommendations from the analysis of past silvicultural outcomes (Part E, Section 3.2) will be incorporated in the development of SGRs. SGRs will be developed using the approved silvicultural guide(s).

The SGRs will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual, and the silvicultural guide(s) identified by the Ministry as applicable to the management unit. Planning efforts from current FMPs should be **reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised** in the development of SGRs. Local knowledge and the experience gained by the planning team from past management practices will also be considered (e.g., results of silvicultural monitoring).

For each SGR, the most common silvicultural treatment package used on the management unit will be identified, as well as acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments for each of the harvest, renewal and tending activities. Application of silviculture treatments for harvest, renewal and tending activities will be consistent with the applicable SGR. If a SGR includes a treatment not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide(s), the treatment will be recorded as an exception. The rationale for that exception will be provided, and the

monitoring program in the FMP will describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 3.18.2). The SGRs will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.4.5 Silvicultural options

Silvicultural options will represent the broad options appropriate for the forest as described in the SGR(s). Modelled silvicultural options exhibit the following characteristics:

- (a) they apply to the same initial forest conditions (e.g., plan forest units and ecosites); and
- (b) they achieve the same future forest conditions (e.g., silvicultural stratum, regeneration standard).

Each silvicultural option will identify the silvicultural stratum to which it applies and will have assumptions about the future forest condition, treatment costs, and success rates in response to treatments (e.g., post-harvest renewal transition rule). The silvicultural options of the base model will reflect the most commonly used SGR(s).

If applicable, a silvicultural option for commercial thinning will be identified and represented in the base model.

A registered professional forester will have undertaken and documented an analysis of silvicultural outcomes in the year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.2). The analysis will provide input to assist in determining the necessary levels of renewal and tending operations, and associated expenditures required. The management unit annual report also provides recommendations that will be used in the development of silvicultural assumptions.

The analysis of past silvicultural outcomes will serve as the default post-harvest renewal transition rules. The analysis of past silvicultural outcomes will consider:

- (a) results of past silvicultural treatments;
- (b) results of SGRs;
- (c) assessments of regeneration results; and
- (d) the relationship between new forest classifications and growth and yield assumptions and historic records.

Any adjustments from the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be supported by rationale. The rationale for adjustments to the default inputs will be consistent with one of the following methods:

- (a) analysis of additional empirical data/information (e.g., ecosite) using correlative techniques; or
- (b) analysis incorporating expert opinion with empirical data/information using a causal framework (e.g., Bayesian belief network).

Where expert opinion is applied, the basis for an adjustment (e.g., ecosite limitations) will require monitoring and reporting, which may be satisfied by an existing monitoring program.

The post-harvest renewal transition rules will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

Silvicultural options will also specify the limits to which the option can be applied on the management unit considering ecological (e.g., only ten percent of jack pine sites are suitable for seeding) and economic constraints (e.g., silviculture program budgets).

Analysis of the model inputs for the treatments, costs and responses is required for proposed silvicultural options:

- (a) which reflect silvicultural practices not recommended in silvicultural guide(s);
- (b) where the outcome is uncertain; or
- (c) where the amount of area to which the strategy applies is uncertain.

Checkpoint three – Support for base model

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4).

1.2.5 Forest sustainability

The CFSA (section 2 (2)) requires sustainability of Crown forest to be determined in accordance with the FMPM. Sustainability is defined in the CFSA as “long term Crown forest health [which is] the condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem’s complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario”.

The CFSA presents two guiding principles for the determination of sustainability:

- (a) Large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated ecological processes and biological diversity should be conserved.
- (b) The long term health and vigour of Crown forests should be provided for by using forest practices that, within the limits of silvicultural requirements, emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns while minimizing adverse effects on plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values.

The FMP must provide for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit. Determinations of the sustainability of the forest on the management unit will be made during the preparation of the FMP and following the implementation of forest operations.

The preliminary determination of sustainability during the preparation of the FMP is conducted during the development of the management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3). The preliminary determination of sustainability will provide an indication that the management direction supports the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

In the preparation of a FMP, the determination of sustainability involves:

- (a) development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) that address:
 - (i) CFSA objective categories and required indicators; and
 - (ii) other desired forest and benefits identified by First Nation and Métis communities, the public, planning team, and LCC;
- (b) assessment of the achievement of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
- (c) development of proposed management direction that balances the achievement of the management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2); and
- (d) concluding that the FMP provides for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit (Part A, Sections 1.2.5.3 and 1.3.8).

The conclusion is a determination that the FMP provides for the long-term forest health on the management unit, and has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (e.g., through the application of forest management guides to protect values).

1.2.5.1 Management objectives, indicators and timing of assessment

The CFSA requires management objectives in a FMP to be compatible with the sustainability of the Crown forest (section 68 (3)(c)); and indicators of objective achievement to be identified (section 68 (3)(d)). Also, the CFSA (section 68 (5)(b)) requires each FMP to contain management objectives relating to:

- (a) social and economic objectives, including harvest levels and a recognition that healthy forest ecosystems are vital to the well-being of Ontario communities;
- (b) Crown forest diversity objectives, including consideration for the conservation of natural landscape patterns, forest structure and composition, habitat for animal life and the abundance and distribution of forest ecosystems;
- (c) objectives relating to the provision of forest cover for those values that are dependent on the Crown forest; and

- (d) silviculture objectives for the harvest, renewal and maintenance of the Crown forest.

The planning team may develop local level objectives to address identified interests (e.g., climate change, forest certification) in the management of the forest. Local level objectives and associated indicators must be measurable through the planning and implementation of forest operations.

If applicable, management objectives will be developed for forest-related species at risk on the management unit.

For each objective category identified under the CFSA the following mandatory set of indicators and their timing of assessment will be documented in the FMP. The indicators and timing of assessment for each objective category include:

Social and economic objective indicators

Long-term projected available harvest volume by species group

- *Intent:* To ensure continued economic benefits (e.g., meeting projected industrial wood requirements) from the forest.
- *Timing of Assessment:* During development of the management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), and Draft Plan to support the final determination of sustainability.

Long-term projected available harvest volume by broad size or product group

- *Intent:* To ensure a range of wood products can be produced over the planning horizon.
- *Timing of Assessment:* During development of management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), and Draft Plan to support the final determination of sustainability.

Opportunities for involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan development and implementation

- *Intent:* To assess the opportunities provided to First Nation and Métis communities to be involved in the preparation and implementation of the FMP. The summary of First Nation and Métis involvement during the preparation of the FMP and the summary of First Nation and Métis community involvement in the review of the AWS may support this assessment.
- *Timing of Assessment:* Draft Plan (i.e., for FMP preparation) and management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0) (i.e., for FMP implementation).

LCC's self-evaluation of their effectiveness in plan development

- *Intent:* To assess responses from LCC members on the effectiveness of their participation in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.
- *Timing of Assessment:* Draft Plan (i.e., for FMP preparation) and management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0) (i.e., for FMP implementation).

Actual harvest area, by plan forest unit (% of planned harvest area)

- *Intent:* To assess the amount of area harvested to identify trends, potential implications and support future planning decisions.
- *Timing of Assessment:* Year six management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Actual harvest volume, by species group (% of planned harvest volume)

- *Intent:* To assess the utilization of available volume to identify trends, potential implications and support future planning decisions.
- *Timing of Assessment:* Year six management unit annual report and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Percent of managed forest area available for regular harvest

- *Intent:* To assess implications as a result of changes to levels in the percent of managed forest available for regular harvest (e.g., changes in area of concern total area).
- *Timing of Assessment:* Draft Plan and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

The ratio of kilometres of primary and branch forest access roads available to kilometres of primary and branch roads not available

- *Intent:* To assess the social implications on the people of Ontario as a result of changes in the ratio of primary and branch forest access roads available for use on the forest from FMP to FMP (e.g., access restrictions, decommissioning).
- *Timing of Assessment:* Draft Plan and the management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Forest diversity objective indicators

- Refer to forest management guides that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale for indicators and their intent
- Timing of Assessment:
 - During development of the management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), and Draft Plan to support the final determination of sustainability.

- Management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Provision of forest cover – Habitat for animal life objective indicators (if applicable)

Habitat for forest related species and species at risk (refer to forest management guides for further indicators)

- *Intent:* If desired by the planning team, to assess level of habitat for forest related species (e.g., moose, deer) and known species at risk on the management unit.
- *Timing of Assessment:*
 - During development the management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), and Draft Plan to support the final determination of sustainability.
 - Management unit annual report for the final year of implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Silviculture objective indicators

Percent of harvested forest area assessed as successfully established by silvicultural strata.

- *Intent:* To assess progress towards successfully establishing depleted areas.
- *Timing of Assessment:*
 - Year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).
 - Management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Percent of harvested forest area assessed as successfully regenerated to the target plan silvicultural strata.

- *Intent:* To assess progress towards achieving silvicultural objectives associated with the management direction for the FMP.
- *Timing of Assessment:*
 - Year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).
 - Management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Ecological sustainability objective indicators

Based on the number of completed reports, the percent of forest operations inspections in compliance by category (i.e., access, harvest, renewal, and maintenance)

- *Intent:* To assess level of compliance for each type of forest operation consistent with the ten-year compliance strategy in the FMP (e.g., risk-based reporting).
- *Timing of Assessment:*

- Year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0)
- Management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Based on the number of completed reports, the percent of forest operations inspections in compliance with operational prescriptions for areas of concern including species at risk (% of completed compliant inspections)

- *Intent:* To assess the level of compliance as it relates to operational prescriptions for areas of concern to mitigate, minimize and prevent potential impacts on identified values. This assessment will be consistent with the 10-year compliance strategy in the FMP (e.g., risk-based reporting).
- *Timing of Assessment:*
 - Year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0)
 - Management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Compliance with practices that protect water quality and fish habitat (% of completed compliant reports)

- *Intent:* To assess the level of compliance on management practices to mitigate, minimize and prevent potential impacts on water quality and fish habitat. This assessment will be consistent with the 10-year compliance strategy in the FMP (e.g., risk-based reporting).
- *Timing of Assessment:*
 - Year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).
 - Management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of completed compliant reports)

- *Intent:* To assess the level of compliance on conditions associated with preventing, minimizing and mitigating site damage. This assessment will be consistent with the 10-year compliance strategy in the FMP (e.g., risk-based reporting).
- *Timing of Assessment:*
 - Year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).
 - Management unit annual report for the final year of plan implementation (Part E, Section 3.0).

The management direction for the FMP and the determination of sustainability require the development of management objectives and associated indicators, desirable levels and targets.

A management objective is a statement of a quantitative or qualitative desired future forest benefit or condition developed specifically for the management unit to be achieved through forest management planning and/or the manipulation of forest cover. A management objective may have an implementation time frame greater than the 10-year period of the FMP.

Each management objective will have an indicator(s). An indicator is a systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are used to assess the effectiveness of forest management planning and/or activities in achieving management objectives, and the sustainability of the forest.

The indicators will be assessed at various times during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. (i.e., assessed during plan preparation; during plan implementation; or the indicators may be assessed during both plan preparation and implementation).

A desirable level will be established for each indicator. A desirable level is a measurable amount (i.e., specific number, range or trend) for an indicator to be achieved and maintained over time. Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction will be established locally by the planning team with input from the LCC. Achievement of desirable levels may require a longer time frame than the modeling horizon.

Spatial management zones

Spatial management zones are geographical areas which:

- (a) provide spatial context in the development of the management direction for a FMP;
- (b) may influence management decisions for the FMP; and
- (c) represent either strategic objectives or areas with distinct ecological characteristics required by the FMPM or other policies (e.g., dynamic caribou habitat schedule, moose emphasis areas, large deer yards).

If applicable, the spatial management zones will be included in the appropriate planning inventory product or other spatial layer in accordance with the FIM and will be represented in the model which supports the development of the management direction for the FMP.

Operational management zones represent areas with distinct operational constraints (e.g., accessibility, wildlife, fisheries or other constraints on forest operations). Operational management zones may be used on management units with significant variation in forest level operational characteristics. If applicable, operational management zones will be included in the appropriate planning inventory product in accordance with the FIM.

Desired forest and benefits meeting

The Ministry district manager will host a desired forest and benefits meeting attended by the planning team, plan advisors, First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC. Part A, Section 3.5.1.1 describes the requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement in the desired forest and benefits meeting. The Ministry district manager may also invite interested members of the public. The purpose of the meeting is to inform participants of the background information and to provide a forum for participants to share their respective interests in the management of the forest. The meeting will provide input for the development of objectives, indicators and desirable levels by:

- (a) identifying local desired forest and benefits;
- (b) reviewing management objectives, indicators, desirable levels, and targets in the current FMP;
- (c) reviewing indicators and target achievement from the year six management unit annual report for the current FMP; and
- (d) reviewing management objectives and indicators from the FMPM and forest management guides.

A summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting will be prepared.

Setting desired levels

Management objectives will be developed to address required indicators. Management objectives may also be developed to address desired forest and benefits identified by the planning team and LCC with input from First Nation and Métis communities and the public (e.g., traditional ecological knowledge, habitat for wildlife species). The planning team will **review and confirm, update, or revise** management objectives from the current FMP. The development of management objectives will also consider the background information (Part A, Section 1.1.8), in particular, forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.4), and recommendations from the year six management unit annual report (Part E, Section 3.0).

- (a) Desirable levels for objective indicators that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction are refined through scoping analysis. Scoping analysis is an iterative process that involves a series of investigations

to provide insight to what the forest is capable of producing to develop realistic and feasible desirable levels for objective indicators.

The following investigations will be completed in the development of desirable levels:

- (a) An investigation and assessment of the ability of the forest to continue to supply forest benefit (e.g., harvest volumes) levels associated with the current FMP; and
- (b) An investigation into the ability of the forest to meet forest diversity and forest cover desirable levels (based on current forest condition and forest dynamics).

Scoping investigations to determine desirable levels (i.e., for the short term, medium term, and long term) that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction will also consider implications on:

- (a) wood supply and projected industrial wood requirements;
- (b) forest conditions;
- (c) habitat; and
- (d) other non-timber resources (e.g., blueberries, eco-tourism).

The management objectives, indicators and the timing of assessment for each indicator will be documented in the FMP. Information associated with the scoping investigations will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

Harvest eligibility criteria

The plan author, with the assistance of the planning team, will develop criteria to identify areas that could reasonably be harvested (i.e., eligible harvest areas). The criteria will be consistent with the direction and standards in the Ministry's applicable forest management guide(s) (e.g., the guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale) and incorporated in strategic modeling.

Considerations for the development of the criteria include:

- (a) the maturity of forest stands;
- (b) basal area, height, and crown closure metrics in shelterwood and selection harvest systems;
- (c) physical operability of an area (e.g., topographical constraints);
- (d) economic operability of an area (e.g., harvest block size, distance to roads)
- (e) species at risk requirements;
- (f) spatial management zones;
- (g) wildlife habitat requirements;
- (h) industrial wood requirements;

- (i) previous commitments to harvest areas;
- (j) provision for continuity of operations;
- (k) the need for insect pest management, salvage operations, and harvest of low volume stands; and
- (l) wildland fire risk.

Checkpoint four – Support for management objectives

This progress checkpoint will confirm support for information and products associated with the development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

1.2.5.2 Development of the proposed management direction and the preliminary determination of sustainability

The base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4) will be used as the starting point for the development of the proposed management direction for the FMP .

The decision support system will be used to conduct strategic and tactical planning analysis. Strategic and tactical planning analysis is an iterative process used to determine the locations, types and levels of access, harvest (e.g., spatial harvest schedule), renewal, and tending activities required to balance the achievement of management objectives associated with the management of forest cover, and to develop achievable targets in the development of the proposed management direction for the FMP.

Setting targets

A target will be established for each indicator. A target is a measurable amount (i.e., specific number, range, or trend) for an indicator to be achieved within the period of the FMP. The target will be consistent with the desirable level of the indicator, or the target will be established to encourage movement towards the desirable level. If the target is moving away from the desirable level in the short term, it must be demonstrated that there is movement towards the desirable level in the medium or long term. At a minimum, a target will be established for each indicator assessed during plan implementation for the first 10-year period of the FMP.

The establishment of targets for each indicator will consider:

- (a) the current forest condition;
- (b) a balance of social, economic and environmental considerations;
- (c) projected industrial wood requirements;
- (d) the associated indicator and the desirable level;
- (e) the potential achievement for the short term (10 years), medium term and long term; and

- (f) projections from past FMPs and historical levels of objective achievement.

Harvest level indicator targets will also consider the historic wood utilization for the management unit, and the maximum even-flow harvest volume by major species group.

The concepts of medium term and long term are indicator specific. The actual timeframes for medium term and long term are indicator specific and will be documented in the FMP.

Strategic planning

Strategic modeling projects how the forest develops over time, in terms of its structure and composition in response to different types, levels, and spatial distribution of forest management activities. Strategic modeling will include 160-year projections. Strategic modeling will be used to demonstrate that the effects of projected forest management activities with the proposed management direction for the period of the FMP provide for acceptable projections of forest management activities in the future.

Documentation of strategic modeling outputs will include:

- (a) projected harvest area by plan forest unit;
- (b) projected harvest volume by species, and broad size or product group;
- (c) projected forest condition for the productive forest by plan forest unit;
- (d) projected landscape guide indicators for forest structure and composition (e.g., landscape classes) for the forest;
- (e) projected levels of silviculture activities; and
- (f) if applicable, projected habitat for selected wildlife species and species at risk.

The strategic planning analysis conducted by the forest analysis and modeling task team will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM.

Tactical planning - Spatial harvest schedule

Tactical forest planning is an intermediate step between strategic (i.e., forest-level objectives) and operational planning (i.e., stand-level operations). Tactical planning (e.g., identification of harvest compartment areas, access strategies, ecological and social pressures) provides a foundation for operational planning and balancing the achievement of management objectives through the implementation of the FMP.

Tactical harvest operations will be developed through a spatial harvest schedule. A spatial harvest schedule is a feasible stand-level timber harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years), and will support the operational planning for the 10-year period of the FMP. The spatial harvest schedule will include the proposed harvest areas for the 10-

year period of the FMP. Areas scheduled for the remaining three FMP periods are preliminary and may be revisited due to factors including new values information, natural disturbances, and results of consultation.

The spatial harvest schedule (i.e., harvest areas for the first four FMP periods) will be assessed for the feasibility of the spatial distribution of the harvest (e.g., accessibility, other land use decisions, balancing of wood costs) and will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

In the preparation for stage two of consultation, any adjustments to the spatial harvest schedule will be supported by strategic analysis that will continue to balance the achievement of management objectives for the short, medium and long-term.

Objective assessment for strategic and tactical planning decisions

The achievement of applicable management objectives will be assessed using the results of decision support systems. Objectives will be assessed individually, in relation to indicators, desirable levels, and targets, and in consideration of other objectives to balance the achievement of management objectives. The management objective information and an assessment of objective achievement will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The achievement of management objectives that do not require decision support systems will also be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

Following spatial assessments, consistent with the Ministry's guide(s) related to the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scales, it may be necessary to re-examine the spatial harvest schedule to balance the achievement of management objectives. Any adjustments to targets will consider the desirable levels for the indicators and will have rationale provided.

The assessment of objective achievement will consider:

- (a) if the desirable level is achieved and/or maintained during the plan period or in the future.
- (b) if the desirable level is not achieved and/or maintained during the plan period. If so, the following questions need to be answered:
 - (i) Is the difference between the desirable level and the target substantial?
 - (ii) Will progress be made towards achievement of the desirable level?
 - (iii) What is the rationale for the difference?
- (c) if there are trends in objective achievement which raise concerns.

Social and economic assessment

A social and economic assessment will be prepared to support the preliminary determination of sustainability for the proposed management direction of the FMP. A qualitative analysis will be prepared using the information in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.13). The qualitative assessment will identify the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the proposed harvest areas for the 10-year period of the FMP from the spatial harvest schedule. The assessment will examine how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities, forest resource processing facilities, the forest sector and wood product users and non-industrial users (i.e., recreation and tourism) of the forest identified in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.13).

In addition to supporting the qualitative assessment, where there is a difference of more than 10% in short-term harvest volume from the current FMP (i.e., between current FMP and term one of new FMP), a quantitative assessment will be required using a social and economic impact model. The quantitative assessment will be prepared by Ministry staff with expertise in socio-economics. While a qualitative assessment of socio-economic impacts identifies the direction of the impacts (i.e., whether the impacts will be positive or negative) it does not estimate the magnitude of the impacts. A difference of more than 10% in harvest volume may result in considerable impact on regional employment, local and provincial tax revenue, and provincial gross domestic product; therefore, this assessment is important to also assess the magnitude of the impacts in addition to direction of the impacts (i.e., qualitative assessment).

Risk assessment

A risk assessment will be prepared to support the preliminary determination of sustainability for the proposed management direction in the FMP. The assessment will investigate risks associated with the implementation of the management direction. When identifying risks, the planning team will consider access limitations, recommendations identified in independent forest audits, and information from enhanced management unit annual reports (Part E, Section 3.5).

The risk assessment will include an investigation of recent wood utilization (e.g., last 10 years) and other identified risks, and an evaluation of the potential implications on the achievement of management objectives.

1.2.5.3 Preliminary determination of sustainability

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider:

- (a) the collective achievement of objectives, including spatial indicators (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
- (b) the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2); and
- (c) the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider whether the proposed management direction provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the forest on the management unit, and will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The documentation of the preliminary determination of sustainability will describe how the management direction provides for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit. The documentation will:

- (a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, including spatial indicators, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
- (b) discuss the social and economic assessment; and
- (c) discuss the risks to implementing the proposed management direction;

The plan author, with the assistance of the planning team will present the proposed management direction, and the preliminary determination of sustainability to the LCC. The Ministry district manager will follow the requirements for First Nation and Métis communities in Part A, Section 3.5.1.1 if First Nation and Métis communities are interested in having a presentation on the proposed management direction for the FMP, and the preliminary determination of sustainability for the management unit.

1.2.6 Primary road corridors

Primary roads provide principal access for the management unit, and are constructed, maintained and used as the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads, although there may be significant periods of time when specific primary roads are not required for forest management purposes. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to corridors for new primary roads which are required for forest management purposes for a 20-year horizon, including extensions to existing primary roads. The planning requirements involve the consideration and environmental analysis of a reasonable range of practical alternative one kilometre wide

corridors, including those corridors applied to potential road and/or road networks identified by the decision support system (i.e., spatial model).

Primary road corridors will be consistent with the spatial harvest schedule for the next four planning periods. Primary road corridors in the previous FMP, within which a road has not yet been constructed, will be reviewed. If the corridor is confirmed, no further corridor planning will be required. If changes to the use management strategy for the road are required, the planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.2.10.7 and Appendix II will apply.

If changes to a corridor, or extensions to a confirmed corridor are required, the planning requirements in this section will apply.

In identifying a reasonable range of alternative corridors for analysis, there will be consideration of:

- (a) the spatial harvest schedule for the next four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years);
- (b) potential road and/or road networks identified by the decision support system (i.e., spatial model);
- (c) the degree to which physical conditions, identified values, private land, and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;
- (d) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, management statement of conservation interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship agreements);
- (e) available historical roads information; and
- (f) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public.

The environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will consist of:

- (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of:
 - (i) providing access to areas eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
 - (ii) potential effects on identified values; and
 - (iii) providing access to any remote First Nation and Métis communities which were previously inaccessible by road;
- (b) consideration of reasonable use management strategies (Part A, Section 1.2.10.7) which include public access provisions or restrictions, maintenance provisions, and, where appropriate, decommissioning provisions and transfer provisions; and
- (c) a consideration of relative costs related to road construction and use management, including maintenance, transfer and decommissioning costs.

Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix II.

The confirmed corridors from the current FMP and the alternative corridors for each new primary road, for the next 20 years will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

If applicable, the planning requirements involving the consideration of a reasonable range of practical alternative one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads will not apply in circumstances where an existing roadbed will be used.

Where an existing roadbed will be used, a one kilometre wide corridor will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM. The proposed corridor will require an environmental analysis which will consider:

- (a) identified values (social, economic, environmental);
- (b) requirements set out in site specific strategies (e.g., use management strategies for SAR or remote tourism);
- (c) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area; and
- (d) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public.

If a new primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a railway, the Grade Crossings regulations under the federal *Railway Safety Act* (1985), as amended from time to time, will apply.

1.2.7 Operational planning

This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the FMP, in preparation for stage two of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2). The information and products which are required to be available at the stage two information forum for the review of the proposed management direction for the FMP are described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.2. Planning of operations will only apply to the planned harvest areas for the 10-year FMP.

Planning efforts from the current FMP will be **reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised** in the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, SGRs and road use management strategies.

The selection and confirmation of areas of operations is an iterative process. There may be adjustments to the areas of operations, spatial harvest schedule, and the assessment of

objective achievement until submission of the final plan for Ministry approval. Areas of operations will be adjusted as a result of the planning of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, the availability of new or better information and in response to First Nation and Métis community, and public comments received (e.g., potential wildland fire risk surrounding communities).

During the selection of areas of operations for the 10-year period of the FMP, and development of other operational aspects of the FMP (e.g., use management strategies, silvicultural ground rules, operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern), the Ministry will provide confirmation to the plan author and planning team that specific proposed operational information satisfies the requirements of the FMPM (Part A, Section 1.2.11). The timelines and operational information for the Ministry to provide confirmation to the plan author and planning team will be completed in accordance with the project plan for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2)

This confirmation by the Ministry is intended to support the planning of operations and the preparation of the draft FMP to assure with some certainty the satisfactory completion of proposed operations, and to minimize alterations on the draft FMP. Circumstances may arise which require re-examination of the proposed management direction (e.g., changes to proposed operations due to results of consultation, identified issues) throughout the preparation of the FMP.

Additional requirements regarding the planning of operations specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

1.2.7.1 Selection of planned harvest areas

Consistent with the spatial harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods, the harvest areas for the 10-year period of the FMP will be identified. In the selection of the planned harvest areas further analysis and modeling may be required to support the balancing of management objectives. Areas selected for the 10-year period will become the planned harvest areas. The planned harvest areas will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

The planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will be identified for each plan forest unit. In the selection of planned areas for harvest, the direction and standards in the Ministry's approved forest management guide(s), and opportunities to mitigate wildland fire risk surrounding communities, assets and resources will be considered. Opportunities to mitigate wildland fire risk will be identified with the assistance of ministry staff with expertise in wildland fire management. The rationale for the planned harvest areas for the 10-year period will be documented in the FMP (i.e., historical arrangements, block size constraints).

If applicable, a separate planned harvest area will be identified for commercial thinning in accordance with the FIM.

The planned harvest areas, including any commercial thinning areas, for the 10-year period will have unique harvest block identifiers and will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

If salvage operations and/or harvest of low volume stands are planned during preparation of the FMP, those harvest areas will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM. Area for salvage and low volume stands will be additional to the planned harvest area.

The planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Salvage operations and low volume stands planned for harvest during the 10 year period will also be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The volume associated with the planned harvest area, including commercial thinning areas, will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The planned harvest volumes in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit will be identified as unutilized. The area and volume associated with the planned harvest area and the projected utilization of the planned harvest volume will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The projected wood utilization by mill will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.7.2 Contingency area

During the 10-year period of the FMP, circumstances (e.g., wildfire, blowdown, operational constraints, markets) may cause some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable or unfeasible for harvest. To accommodate such circumstances, contingency area for harvest operations will be identified and planned. The contingency area will serve to replace area for harvest during the 10-year period of the FMP, and will only be used if required.

Sufficient contingency area will be selected from term two of the spatial harvest schedule areas to support a minimum of one year, and a maximum of two years, of harvest operations. The planning team will consider harvest eligibility criteria (e.g., maturity of forest stands) when selecting contingency area from term two of the spatial harvest schedule. Contingency area will align with the levels of planned harvest area for each plan forest unit, considering area availability (e.g., ease of access, non-contentious).

The contingency areas will have unique harvest block identifiers. The contingency areas and associated unique identifiers will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

The area and volume of the contingency area will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

An administrative amendment to the FMP will be required to permit forest operations to proceed in the contingency area (Part C, Section 2.0).

1.2.7.3 Renewal and tending areas

Areas for renewal and tending operations will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM for the 10-year period. Those areas will include: all of the areas selected for harvest; areas previously harvested during the current or previous FMP(s) and not yet renewed; areas of natural disturbances which require renewal; and areas which require tending.

The analysis of silvicultural outcomes (Part E, Section 3.2), will be used in the planning of renewal and tending operations. The types and levels of renewal and tending operations planned for the 10-year period will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The levels of renewal and tending operations will be consistent with the projected levels of the proposed management direction for the FMP, and the results of the analysis of silvicultural outcomes.

1.2.7.4 Silvicultural trial areas

Silvicultural trial areas are optional and can potentially occur on harvest, renewal or tending areas. The Ministry's silvicultural guide(s) describes the requirements for the preparation, review and approval of silvicultural trial areas. The FMP will include the following information for silvicultural trial areas:

- (a) treatment and forest type eligibility;
- (b) limitations (e.g., size and number); and
- (c) any applicable renewal standards.

Silvicultural trial areas will be planned and implemented using the approved silvicultural guide(s). Silvicultural trial areas will be implemented in accordance with an approved SGR (Part A, Section 1.2.9.2).

The plan author and planning team will consider what forest types are eligible for trial area implementation. When determining if any forest types are eligible for trial area implementation, the effect of a failed trial area on achievement of FMP targets will be considered.

1.2.8 Completion of on-going harvest operations from previous plan

There may be situations where harvest operations from the current approved FMP are not completed before expiry of the plan. Provisions for bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations allow for harvest of these areas in the new FMP.

1.2.8.1 Bridging operations

Areas of bridging operations will be identified to allow for the harvest of areas from the current approved FMP in the new FMP. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be identified from areas scheduled to be accessed and harvested in the current approved plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be portrayed in the new FMP in accordance with the FIM and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP.

The plan author and planning team will determine the amount of bridging area by forest unit (i.e., based on a subset of the forecast depletions of the current FMP), the location of bridging areas. Bridging operations will be eligible for scheduling and completion during the first six years of the new FMP. The amount, location and timeframe will be identified in the new FMP. The amount, location of, and timing for bridging operations will be determined based on the consideration of:

- (a) timeframes to complete planned harvest areas (e.g., adjacency to other harvest areas, selection or shelterwood systems, dynamic caribou habitat schedules);
- (b) direction in the FMP for spatial management zones, or large landscape patches;
- (c) identified values (i.e., social, economic, environmental); and
- (d) requirements set out in site specific strategies. In specific areas, (i.e., those with use management strategies (e.g., SAR, remote tourism)), bridging operations should be prioritized for completion.

The estimated volume associated with the bridging operations will also be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The bridging harvest areas contribute to the achievement of management objectives in the current FMP but not the new FMP, therefore, identified bridging areas will be required to be identified as depleted in the decision support system (i.e., part of the forecast depletion layer).

The new FMP will describe how the harvest of bridging areas will be considered in the preparation of annual work schedules and management unit annual reports (i.e., timing for reporting against current FMP) developed in accordance with the new FMP.

1.2.8.2 Second-pass harvest operations

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may have been planned in two passes, but only the first pass may have been completed before the expiry of the current approved FMP. Areas planned for second-pass harvest, where only the first pass has occurred by the expiry of the current FMP, will be identified to allow for completion of harvest operations. Areas planned for second-pass harvest operations will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM, and will be updated during the preparation of the FMP. The second-pass harvest areas do not contribute to the achievement of management objectives of the new FMP.

An estimate of the volume associated with second-pass harvest areas will be identified.

1.2.9 Prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending operations, and conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits

For the areas of operations for the 10-year period, including contingency areas identified from term two of the spatial harvest schedule, prescriptions and conditions will be developed. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be developed for all harvest, renewal and tending, and protection areas. Areas of concern conditions will be developed for all roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits for the 10-year period. Part A, Section 1.2.9.2 provides direction for silvicultural ground rules and conditions on regular operations for harvest, renewal and tending operations.

1.2.9.1 Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern

An area of concern is a defined geographic area associated with an identified value that may be affected by forest management activities. Identified values are known natural, cultural or First Nation or Métis resource attributes or uses of land, including all lakes and streams, which must be considered in forest management planning. These identified values are portrayed for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10) in accordance with the FIM. An operational prescription for harvest, renewal, tending, and protection activities or a condition on a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit is developed for an area of concern to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on the value.

Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of operations), modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) or regular operations (i.e., in accordance with the SGRs), individually or in combination. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing,

equipment), or unique prescriptions that are developed to protect or manage specific values.

The proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. All areas of concern will be clearly identified, and where practical, the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will also be portrayed in accordance with the FIM. All operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern information will be cross-referenced in accordance with the FIM, and if applicable, the supplementary documentation forms (Appendix III).

For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.2.8.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.2.8.2), the planning team will determine if the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern from the current approved FMP will be used or if the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern for the new FMP will be used. The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified in accordance with the FIM. The operational prescriptions and conditions will be identified, and where practical portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

Planning efforts from current FMPs should be **reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised** in the development of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.

Operational prescriptions and conditions will be developed for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern with a common value(s), using the forest management guides identified by the Ministry as applicable to the management unit. An operational prescription or condition for an area of concern may also be proposed from another planning exercise for inclusion in the FMP. In some situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition for an area of concern.

Operational prescriptions and conditions from a forest management guide

If a forest management guide provides specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) as to the appropriate prescription or condition to be used for a particular value, the specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) will be the operational prescription or condition. Documentation of the operational prescription or condition, and the applicable section of the forest management guide, will be provided in the FMP in accordance with the FIM and no supplementary documentation is required.

If a change from the specific direction or recommendations in a forest management guide is desired, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning team. In such situations, operational prescriptions and condition(s) for species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of Ministry staff with expertise in species at risk. In situations where the planning team desires a change to an operational

prescription or condition, the operational prescription or condition will be documented as an exception in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The rationale for that exception will be provided in the supplementary documentation (Part B, Section 4.2.1, Appendix III), and the monitoring program for the FMP will describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that exception (Part B, Section 3.13.2.1, Appendix II).

Operational prescriptions and conditions from other planning exercises

An operational prescription or condition that directly relates to forest management activities may have been previously developed for an area of concern through another planning exercise (e.g., development of a resource stewardship agreement).

The proposed operational prescription or condition will be made available for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation (Part A, Section 3.0), and public review. If the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and public review supports the proposed operational prescription or condition, no further planning will be required. The proposed operational prescription or condition, and its source, will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The consideration of the comments received from First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public at stage two will be documented in the supplementary documentation (Part B, Section 5.1). The rationale for the operational prescription or condition, will be documented in the FMP.

If First Nation and Métis involvement and consultation (Part A, Section 3.0), and public review at stage two does not support the proposed operational prescription or condition, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning team.

Operational prescriptions and conditions developed by the planning team

For some value(s), an approved forest management guide may not provide specific direction or recommendations, no forest management guide may exist, or a proposed operational prescription or condition may not have been developed in another planning exercise (i.e., not an exception to a guide). In addition, as described in the requirements for operational prescriptions and conditions from a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations in a forest management guide (i.e., an exception to a guide which will require a monitoring program) may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription or condition.

In the development of the operational prescription or condition, there will be consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, and

participation of First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public. For an operational prescription or condition developed for an area of concern that involves a cultural heritage resource value, tourism or recreational value, there will be consideration of visual aesthetics, which may include the use of viewscape analysis techniques, in the development of the operational prescription or condition. Operational prescriptions and condition(s) for species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of Ministry staff with expertise in species at risk.

The environmental analysis of each alternative operational prescription or condition will include:

- (a) the identification of the potential environmental effects of specific forest management operations on the value(s) in the area of concern; and
- (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative operational prescription or condition in preventing, minimizing or mitigating those potential effects.

The selection of the proposed operational prescription or condition will be based on a comparison of the environmental analyses of the alternative operational prescriptions or conditions.

The proposed operational prescription or condition will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Documentation of the consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, the participation of First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public, and the rationale for the proposed operational prescription or condition will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP, in the form prescribed in Appendix III.

1.2.9.2 Prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending areas

For harvest, renewal, and tending areas, SGRs will be developed (Part A, Section 1.2.9.2), conditions on regular operations will be identified, and any requirements for planned clearcuts will apply.

Silvicultural ground rules

The SGRs will serve as the prescriptions for regular operations within areas of operations for the 10-year period of the FMP, and naturally disturbed areas that are harvested. The SGRs will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guide(s) identified by the Ministry as applicable to the management unit. The SGRs will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For the planned areas of operations for the 10-year period, the applicable SGRs will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM, and cross-referenced to the SGR information in the FMP. For candidate areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.2.8.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.2.8.2), the applicable SGRs from the current approved FMP will be identified.

The SGR information represents the best estimate of the site conditions that are likely to be encountered, based on the available information at the time of the planning of operations. Application of silviculture treatments for harvest, renewal and tending activities will be consistent with the applicable SGR.

At the time of implementation of operations, in the event that the actual site conditions encountered are found to be different than those previously identified in the FMP, other relevant approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the SGRs can be selected (Part D, Section 3.5.2).

The situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of herbicide may occur will be described in the FMP.

The planning team will identify the planned levels of renewal and tending activities and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two passes. The planning team will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will achieve the silvicultural objectives in the FMP.

Residual forest for planned clearcuts

Areas for harvest operations using the clearcut silvicultural system will be selected using the direction in the Ministry's applicable forest management guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales).

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silvicultural system, the required area of stand-level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in the Ministry's applicable forest management guide(s). The area of stand-level residual will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide(s) and the FIM.

1.2.9.3 Important ecological features and other operational standards and guidelines

Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits

Conditions applied on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits, to maintain or protect important ecological features that are not addressed by operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests) or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines will be identified. Conditions on roads, landings and aggregate pits for important ecological features or other specific operational standards and guidelines may be identified for the entire management unit or for spatial management zones (i.e., strategic or operational).

Planning efforts from current FMPs will be **reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised** in the development of conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits. Conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits will be developed for important ecological features or to implement other specific operational standards and guidelines using the forest management guides identified by the Ministry as applicable to the management unit. Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits, will be documented in the FMP.

If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the planning team will develop conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits. In addition, as described in the requirements for conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits from a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations in a forest management guide may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will develop conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits and the rationale for the change from the specific direction or recommendation will be documented in the FMP. Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits for species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of Ministry staff with expertise in species at risk.

Conditions on regular operations

Conditions applied in areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, conducted in accordance with the SGRs, to maintain or protect important ecological features that are not addressed by operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests, wildlife trees) or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines (e.g., rutting) will be identified. Conditions on regular operations may be identified for the entire management unit or for spatial management zones (i.e., strategic or operational).

Planning efforts from current FMPs should be **reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised** in the development of conditions on regular operations. Conditions on regular operations

will be developed for important ecological features or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines using the forest management guides identified by the Ministry as applicable to the management unit.

Conditions on regular operations, described in the Ministry's applicable guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If no specific policy direction is provided in an approved forest management guide, the planning team will develop conditions on regular operations. In addition, as described in the requirements for conditions on regular operations from a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations in a forest management guide may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will develop conditions on regular operations and the rationale for the change from the specific direction or recommendation will be documented in the FMP. Conditions on regular operations for species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of Ministry staff with expertise in species at risk.

1.2.10 Roads

The planning requirements for new primary, branch, and operational roads that are required to access harvest areas, including contingency areas, that are planned to be constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP, are described in this section. Planning requirements for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new operational roads within operational road boundaries, for the ten-year period, including any contingency areas are also described. Planning requirements for existing roads, and crossings of areas of concern for existing roads are also described. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP. The planning of water crossings will be conducted in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.3.1.

For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.2.8.1), the planning team will confirm if the road corridor planning and planning of operational roads from the current approved FMP will apply, or the road corridor planning and planning of operational roads in the new FMP will apply.

Each proposed new primary, branch and operational road will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The associated use management strategy for each proposed new primary, branch and operational road will be documented in the FMP and cross-referenced to the use management strategy information in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.10.1 Primary road corridors

Based on the environmental analysis of alternative corridors, the spatial harvest schedule, First Nation and Métis community and public comments at stage two, the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary road required for the 20-year horizon and the associated use management strategy will be finalized. The rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be documented. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will be provided. The format for the documentation is prescribed in Appendix II.

Based on the First Nation and Métis community, and public comments at stage two, any changes to the use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.2.10.7) for a confirmed primary road corridor from a previous FMP will be documented in the FMP. Documentation of the rationale for the revised use management strategy for the road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix I.

In circumstances where an existing roadbed will be used, the planning requirements involving the consideration of a reasonable range of practical alternatives one kilometre wide corridors for planned new primary roads (Part A, Section 1.2.6) will not apply.

Where an existing roadbed will be used, a 200 metre wide corridor will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM to support First Nation and Métis, and public consultation. The proposed corridor will require an environmental analysis which will consider:

- (a) identified values (social, economic, environmental);
- (b) requirements set out in site specific strategies (e.g., use management strategies for SAR or remote tourism;
- (c) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area; and
- (d) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public.

Each planned new primary road corridor, and confirmed primary road corridor will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The use management strategy for the road will be documented in the FMP and cross-referenced to the use management strategy information in accordance with the FIM. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP will be identified.

1.2.10.2 Branch road corridors

Branch roads are roads that branch off primary roads, or other branch roads, providing access to and through areas of operations on a management unit. Whenever a new road, other than a primary or operational road, is required to provide access to, through, or between, separate areas of operations, the road will be classified as a branch road.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to any corridors for new branch roads which are required for forest management purposes for the 10-year period of the FMP, including extensions to existing branch roads.

For each new branch road, a one kilometre wide corridor will be identified, based on consideration of:

- (a) the spatial harvest schedule;
- (b) the degree to which the physical conditions, identified values and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;
- (c) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship agreements);
- (d) available historical roads information; and
- (e) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known affected persons, and organizations.

The consideration of items (a) to (e) will provide the rationale for the proposed corridor for each new branch road. Rationale for the proposed corridor will be documented in the FMP. A common rationale may apply to the proposed corridors for a number of new branch roads

Where an existing roadbed will be used, a 200 metre wide corridor will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM to support First Nation and Métis, and public consultation. The branch road corridor will require an environmental analysis which will consider:

- (a) identified values (social, economic, environmental);
- (b) requirements set out in site specific strategies (e.g., use management strategies for SAR or remote tourism);
- (c) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area; and
- (d) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public.

In circumstances where an existing roadbed will be used rationale for the one kilometre wide corridors will not be required.

Each proposed new branch road will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. For each new branch road, a use management strategy will also be developed, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.2.10.7. Rationale for the use management strategy will be documented in the FMP. The road use management strategy will be documented in the FMP, and cross-referenced to the use management strategy information in accordance with the FIM.

A common use management strategy may also apply to a number of new branch roads.

The proposed corridor for each new branch road for the 10-year period will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

If a new branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a railway, the Grade Crossings regulations under the federal *Railway Safety Act* (1985), as amended from time to time, will apply.

1.2.10.3 Area of concern crossings

Primary and branch roads

The planning requirements in this section will apply to each crossing of an area of concern by a proposed corridor for a new primary or branch road. This section will also apply to each crossing of an area of concern by a confirmed primary and branch road corridor. In the preparation of the FMP, these crossings will be planned for the portion of the road that will be constructed during the 10-year period.

For each crossing of an area of concern, there will be a determination and documentation of:

- (a) locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed; and
- (b) conditions on the construction of the crossing (e.g., crossing structure, construction methods, mitigative measures).

The determination of locations within an area of concern where a road may be constructed, and construction conditions, will involve consideration and documentation of:

- (a) identified values;
- (b) applicable Ministry guide(s);
- (c) the results of discussions with First Nation and Métis communities, known affected persons, and organizations; and

(d) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

For each new primary and branch road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

For each new and/or confirmed primary and branch road crossing of an area of concern in a proposed corridor the conditions on construction within an area of concern will be identified. The conditions on new primary or branch road construction within an area of concern will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a primary road, the receipt of comments will be noted in the FMP in accordance with the FIM and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix III, Part B).

If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a branch road, the receipt of comments will be noted in the FMP in accordance with the FIM and documented in the summary of public consultation in the supplementary documentation (Part B, Section 5.1).

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the primary road, branch road, or landing as described in the Ministry's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable policy will apply. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

1.2.10.4 Operational roads

Operational roads are roads within operational road boundaries, other than primary or branch roads, that provide short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often decommissioned and/or returned to productive forest.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to:

- (a) identification of operational road boundaries, within which new operational roads may be constructed;
- (b) conditions on new operational road crossings of areas of concern; and
- (c) the development of a use management strategy for the new operational roads and/or network of operational roads within each operational road boundary.

The areas within which new operational roads are to be constructed for the 10-year period will be identified by operational road boundaries. An operational road boundary may include planned areas of operations, and the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the planned areas of operations within which an operational road is planned to be constructed. Operational road boundaries are intended to identify where operational roads may be constructed, and should provide flexibility in operational road location where necessary (e.g., terrain limitations). In the identification of operational road boundaries the planning team may consider potential operational road locations identified by the decision support system.

In circumstances where an existing roadbed(s) will be used the operational road boundaries will be portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM to support First Nation and Métis, and public consultation. These operational road boundaries will require an environmental analysis which will consider:

- (a) identified values (social, economic, environmental);
- (b) requirements set out in site specific strategies (e.g., use management strategies for SAR or remote tourism);
- (c) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area; and
- (d) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public.

In circumstances where an existing roadbed(s) will be used rationale for the operational road boundary will not be required.

Operational road boundaries will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

For operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the construction of the crossings will be identified for individual areas of concern or groups of areas of concern. The determination of the conditions will involve consideration and documentation of:

- (a) identified values;
- (b) applicable Ministry guide(s);
- (c) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known affected persons, and organizations;
- (d) available historical roads information; and
- (e) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

The conditions on construction of operational road crossings of areas of concern or landings within an area of concern will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM, and where practical, portrayed.

If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a operational road, the receipt of comments will be noted in the FMP in accordance with the FIM and documented in the summary of public consultation in the supplementary documentation (Part B, Section 5.1).

For each new operational road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in the Ministry's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable policy will apply. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes must traverse a railway, the Grade Crossings regulations under the federal *Railway Safety Act* (1985), as amended from time to time, will apply.

Use management strategies will be developed for new operational roads or networks of operational roads within operational road boundaries (Part A, Section 1.2.10.7) and documented in the FMP and cross-referenced to the use management strategy information in accordance with the FIM. A common use management strategy may apply to multiple new operational roads or networks of operational roads.

1.2.10.5 Existing roads

Each existing road and/or road network to be documented and portrayed in the FMP will include those which:

- (a) fall under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry¹;
- (b) are planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP;
- (c) are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, except any roads and/or road networks that have been reported as decommissioned and are not scheduled for use during the period of the FMP, or are of shared responsibility between the sustainable forest licensee and another resource user.

If a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road and/or road network, or an existing use management strategy will be changed, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.107 will apply.

Each proposed or changed use management strategy will be documented in the FMP and cross-referenced to the use management strategy information in accordance with the FIM.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes traverses a provincial park or conservation reserve, the PPCRA and applicable policy will apply. The additional requirements of the PPCRA will not apply in the recreation/utilization zone of Algonquin Park. The requirements of the Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves will also apply.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes must traverse a railway, the Grade Crossings regulations under the federal *Railway Safety Act* (1985), as amended from time to time, will apply.

If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern for an existing road, the receipt of comments will be noted in the FMP and documented in the summary of public consultation in the supplementary documentation (Part B, Section 5.1).

Conditions on existing roads and landings

The planning and construction of crossings of an area of concern for existing roads will be consistent with direction in the Ministry's guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales and the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

¹ Roads under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. The Ministry does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern or an important ecological feature, the appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing, as described in the Ministry's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For each crossing of an area of concern that involves a water crossing the crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable AWS (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the road and/or landing as described in the Ministry's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

1.2.10.6 Forestry aggregate pits

Under Section 8 of Ontario Regulation 244/97 made under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, a person who operates a pit while conducting forest operations on Crown land on behalf of the Crown or under the authority of a forest resource license and in accordance with a FMP approved under the CFSA is exempt from subsection 34(1) of that Act, as amended from time to time (i.e., the requirement for an aggregate permit to operate a pit). The following criteria will apply to a forestry aggregate pit:

- (a) the aggregate is required for a forest access road in a management unit;
- (b) aggregate is extracted:
 - (i) no closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table; or
 - (ii) closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table if:
 - the proposed site is remote or isolated; and
 - the excavation limit of the site is not within:
 - 500 metres of a coldwater stream;
 - 1000 metres of a waterwell, whether dug or drilled; and
 - 5000 metres of a receptor (e.g., residences or facilities where people sleep {nursing homes, hospitals, trailer parks, camping grounds}; schools; day-care centres).
- (c) the pit is established within:
 - (i) an approved new primary or branch road corridor in the FMP, and identified in the AWS;
 - (ii) an approved area of operations in the FMP, and identified in the AWS;
 - (iii) an approved operational road boundary in the FMP, and identified in the AWS; or

- (iv) an approved aggregate extraction area in the FMP, and identified in the AWS located within 500 metres of an existing forest access road.

Aggregate pits that satisfy these criteria are hereafter referred to as “forestry aggregate pits”.

Operational standards for forestry aggregate pits

Forestry aggregate pits will be operated in accordance with the operational standards specified in the approved FMP and set out in Appendix III.

Operational standards for forestry aggregate pits as set out in Appendix III will be documented in the FMP.

Aggregate extraction areas

Aggregate extraction areas identify known sites of aggregate where a forestry aggregate pit is planned to be established. Aggregate extraction areas will be within 500 metres of an existing forest access road that is outside:

- (a) an approved area of operations;
- (b) an operational road boundary;
- (c) a primary road corridor; or
- (d) a branch road corridor.

Aggregate extraction areas will be identified for the period of the FMP.

Conditions on forestry aggregate pits

The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in the Ministry’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern or an important ecological feature, the appropriate conditions, as described in the Ministry’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in accordance with the FIM.

If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an area of concern or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the forestry aggregate

pit as described in the Ministry’s guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

1.2.10.7 Use management strategies

Use management strategies will be required for new primary and branch roads and new operational roads and/or road networks within operational road boundaries. Use management strategies will also be required for each existing road and/or road network that:

- (a) fall under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry²;
- (b) is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP;
- (c) is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, except any roads and/or road networks that have been reported as decommissioned and are not scheduled for use during the period of the FMP, or are of shared responsibility between the sustainable forest licensee and another resource user.

A use management strategy includes:

- (a) maintenance provisions, including road maintenance herbicide application, and a statement that where routine maintenance is not expected to occur for the next five years, notification will be provided to the Ministry;
- (b) monitoring provisions;
- (c) access provisions or restrictions which apply to the public and commercial resource users, with the rationale for the restrictions;
- (d) a statement if the intent of the sustainable forest licensee is to transfer the responsibility for the road or road network to the Ministry during the period of the FMP;
- (e) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility within the plan period, the Ministry will provide the management intent (i.e., maintain or not maintain road and/or road network for public use, maintain through a third party or other stakeholder(s), or decommission the road and/or road network) for the road and/or road network; and

Road use management strategies must be informed by existing policy direction (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, land use policy).

² Roads under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry are those roads that fall within the definition of “road” under s.48 of the PLA. The Ministry does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

For each new, or existing road and/or road network, the use management strategy will be documented in the FMP, and cross-referenced to the use management strategy information in accordance with the FIM. If a change is proposed to the future use management for an existing road, the road will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

Road decommissioning

The Ministry and the sustainable forest licensee will determine and agree on the approach for road decommissioning on the management unit (e.g., application of specific conditions or arrangements). Road decommissioning will be undertaken to render a road impassable to licensed highway vehicular traffic, provide for public safety and reduce potential environmental damage. Road decommissioning may include access control point activities such as berms, and the removal of water crossings, or access control segment activities such as natural regeneration, site preparation and regeneration of a road.

Decommissioning activities for roads and/or road networks will be documented in the FMP and involve the consideration of:

- (a) management objectives for the FMP;
- (b) use management strategies;
- (c) identified values;
- (d) applicable Ministry guide(s);
- (e) applicable protocol(s) for the review and approval of forestry water crossings;
- (f) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known affected persons, and organizations; and
- (g) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

Primary and branch roads constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP and any existing roads and/or road networks where decommissioning activities are planned will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Operational road boundaries where decommissioning activities are planned for the 10-year period of the FMP will also be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

If consistent with the approach for decommissioning roads and/or road networks on the management unit in the FMP, operational roads and/or road networks will be deemed decommissioned and/or returned to productive forest following the completion of forest operations when:

- (a) the road and/or road network has received silviculture treatments, consistent with an applicable SGR, (e.g., natural regeneration, mechanical site preparation and artificial regeneration) which has been reported in the management unit annual report; and

- (b) all associated water crossings have been removed. Water crossing(s) for a road and/or road network may remain in place where agreed upon by the Ministry (e.g., in selection harvest systems, for recreational purposes); or
- (c) any conditions or arrangements have been agreed upon by the Ministry and the sustainable forest licensee (e.g., retain water crossing for another user).

Operational roads and/or road networks that are deemed decommissioned will not require the transfer of responsibility to the Ministry. Operational roads that are deemed to be decommissioned will be reported in the management unit annual report.

The sustainable forest licensee will maintain existing roads inventory information for the development of future FMPs. The existing roads inventory will be updated in accordance with the FIM at the beginning of each new FMP to identify those roads which have been returned to productive forest (i.e., removed from inventory).

If applicable, where the sustainable forest licensee and the Ministry have agreed to not decommission an operational road and/or road network, the Ministry will assume responsibility of the operational road and/or road network. The agreement to not decommission an operational road and/or road network, including any conditions of transfer, and the transfer of responsibility will be communicated between the sustainable forest licensee and the Ministry.

If applicable, where the sustainable forest licensee has determined an operational road and/or road network will not be used for a period greater than ten years, water crossings associated with the road and/or road network will be removed following the completion of forest operations.

Primary and branch road transfers

Where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility of a primary or branch road within the plan period and the Ministry's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, the sustainable forest licensee and Ministry will develop a process to complete the transfer of roads (e.g., submission and reporting). The process to complete the transfer of primary and branch roads will be consistent with use management strategies in the FMP

The process developed by the sustainable forest licensee and Ministry to transfer primary and branch roads will be documented in the FMP.

Road locations to be transferred, within the plan period, and associated water crossings, road class(es), use management strategies, and proposed year of transfer information will be exchanged in accordance with the FIM.

Upon completion of the required activities consistent with the road transfer process in the FMP, the official transfer of the road will be approved through an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0).

Information products to support the submission of the amendment and update of roads inventory information will be completed in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.10.8 Wood storage yards

Wood storage yards are sites that are geographically separated from the harvest location (i.e., outside the original active harvest block) that may be used for slashing, sorting, storage and other wood measurement activities of forest resources prior to the movement to final processing destination(s) (e.g., previous harvest blocks, forestry aggregate pits, existing or new wood storage yards). Wood storage yards will not inhibit public access within the management unit.

The FMP will identify the type and duration of the wood storage yard. Wood storage yards will be portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

Wood storage yards must be operated in accordance with the operational standards set out in Appendix V.

Operational standards for wood storage yards as set out in Appendix V will be documented in the FMP.

Any changes to the type, or period of use for a wood storage will require an amendment to the FMP in accordance with Part C, Section 2.0.

1.2.11 Confirmation of draft proposed operations

During the planning of operations and development of other operational information of the FMP (e.g., use management strategies, silvicultural ground rules, operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern), the Ministry will provide confirmation to the plan author and planning team that the proposed operations information has been completed in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM. Proposed operations information to be confirmed and the associated timelines for confirmation will be identified in the project plan for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2). Proposed operations information to be confirmed may include:

- a) spatial harvest schedule for first four FMP periods and the and proposed planned harvest and contingency areas for the 10-year period of the FMP;
- b) eligible areas for renewal and tending;

- c) potential areas of bridging operations, if applicable;
- d) potential areas of second-pass harvest operations, if applicable;
- e) operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern required by the Ministry's forest management guides;
- f) silvicultural ground rules;
- g) conditions on regular operations and conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits for important ecological features required by the Ministry's forest management guides;
- h) primary and branch road corridors;
- i) area of concern crossings for primary and branch roads;
- j) forestry aggregate pits exemption criteria and operating standards;
- k) wood storage yards exemption criteria and operating standards; and
- l) use management strategies for roads or road networks

The confirmation of the required information for proposed operations will be provided by the Ministry to support the planning of operations and the preparation of the draft FMP.

The confirmation is intended to enable the preparation of the draft FMP to proceed with some certainty, to reduce the Ministry review workload at draft plan, and to minimize alterations to the draft FMP following First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation (Part A, Section 3.0), and public review on the draft FMP. However, circumstances may arise which require re-examination of the proposed operations information (e.g., changes to proposed operations due to results of consultation, identified issues).

1.2.12 Expenditures

The projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, will be identified based on the planned harvest areas. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations will be described. The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

1.2.13 Summary of the proposed management direction for the FMP

To facilitate First Nation and Métis community, and public review of the proposed management direction for the FMP (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.2, 3.4 and/or 3.5), a summary of the proposed management direction for the FMP will be produced. The summary will include:

- (a) text to summarize:
 - (i) the strategic and tactical components of the proposed management direction;
 - (ii) the assessment of objective achievement with rationale for indicators that are not moving towards the desirable level;
 - (iii) the preliminary determination of sustainability including the rationale for the proposed management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3);
 - (iv) the risks to implementing the proposed management direction;
 - (v) the operational components of the proposed management direction, including:
 - operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern; and
 - silvicultural ground rules;
- (b) information products in accordance with the FIM to describe the:
 - (i) spatial harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods;
 - (ii) planned operations, including contingency area, for the 10-year period of the FMP;
 - (iii) confirmed primary road corridors;
 - (iv) new alternative primary road corridors.

The summary of the proposed management direction will be written in a clear and concise manner to facilitate the First Nation and Métis community, and public review.

Checkpoint five – Regional director support for the proposed management direction, preliminary determination of sustainability and proposed operations

This progress checkpoint will confirm support by the Ministry for the information and products associated with the proposed management direction, the preliminary determination of sustainability and the proposed operations developed in Part A, Section 1.2.1 to 1.2.13. This progress checkpoint will also confirm support from the Regional Director for the planning team to proceed with stage two of consultation.

1.2.14 Stage two – Review of proposed management direction for the FMP

After the requirements in sections 1.2.1 to 1.2.14 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.2, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

1.3 Preparing for stage three – Preparation, submission and review of the draft forest management plan

1.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and review of the draft FMP. Stage three of public consultation (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3) will take place concurrently with the review of the draft FMP. The information and products which are required to be available at the stage three information forum are described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.2.

1.3.2 Preparation of the draft forest management plan

Following the First Nation and Métis community, and public review of proposed management direction at stage two (e.g., spatial harvest schedule, planned operations) (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.2, 3.4 and/or 3.5), the Ministry will compile comments that were received from each First Nation and Métis community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 3.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 3.5. The planning team will also compile comments that were received from the public. The planning team will review the comments, consider if additional changes to the proposed management direction for the FMP are required and make the necessary changes.

The monitoring and assessment programs will be developed (Part B, Section 3.18) for forest operations inspections, exceptions monitoring, assessment of regeneration, and monitoring of roads and water crossings, that will be conducted during the period of the FMP. The wildland fire related requirements including fire prevention and preparedness measures will be prepared (Part B, Section 3.19) and included in the FMP. The draft FMP will be produced in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B of this manual and information requirements prescribed in the FIM.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the FMP in the format prescribed in the FIM. For those components of the draft FMP that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also sign the draft FMP in the format prescribed in the FIM. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the draft FMP. The Ministry does not sign the draft FMP.

A List of Exceptions will be produced, in the format described in the FIM. The List of Exceptions includes all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations in

the applicable forest management guide(s). The List of Exceptions will accompany the FMP in a format prescribed by the FIM.

Prior to submission of the draft FMP to the Ministry, the plan author will ensure that;

- (a) the plan is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the FMPM, and information requirements of the FIM;
- (b) all calculations are correct;
- (c) the plan is edited for ease of understanding; and
- (d) the plan contains page numbers and line numbers.

1.3.3 Submission of the draft forest management plan

The plan author will submit the draft FMP for the Ministry's review on or before the scheduled date for draft plan submission.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft FMP to the LCC. At the request of the LCC, an electronic copy of the draft FMP, or paper copies of specified sections of the draft plan, will be provided to the LCC for review.

1.3.4 Preparation of the draft forest management plan summary

A draft FMP summary will be prepared. The purpose of the summary is to facilitate First Nation and Métis community, and public review of the draft FMP (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.3, 3.4 and/or 3.5), by having a summary of the plan available for reviewers to keep for their own use. The content requirements of the FMP summary are prescribed in Part B, Section 6.0.

The summary will be submitted to the Ministry regional resources manager at least 30 days before the information forum to review the draft FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.3). A French version of the summary will be prepared by the Ministry. The plan author will submit the English and French versions of the draft FMP summary. The draft FMP summary will be available with the draft FMP that is available for First Nation and Métis community, and public review.

1.3.5 Availability of the draft forest management plan

As described in Part A, Sections 2.3.3.3, 3.4 and/or 3.5, the draft FMP, and the draft FMP summary (english and french versions), will be available for public, and First Nation and Métis review through the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website.

As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3, First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the draft FMP.

1.3.6 Stage three – Review of the draft forest management plan

Concurrent with the 60 day Ministry review of the draft FMP, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.3, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

1.3.7 Ministry review of the draft forest management plan

The Ministry regional resources manager will confirm that the draft FMP is complete before the commencement of the concurrent Ministry review, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation (Part A, Sections 3.4 and/or 3.5), and public review of the draft FMP.

A period of 60 days is provided for Ministry review of the draft FMP. In most situations, Ministry reviewers will be familiar with the plan, having participated on, or provided advice to, the planning team. Some sections of the plan will have had a preliminary review, or will have received preliminary Ministry support at a progress checkpoint during the preparation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.1.6). The Ministry will also have reviewed the proposed management direction, as part of the Ministry regional director's support for the proposed management direction, preliminary determination of sustainability, and proposed operations.

The purpose of the Ministry review of the draft FMP is to confirm that the plan meets the requirements of the FMPM and the FIM. The review will also confirm:

- (a) relevant policies and obligations have been considered;
- (b) forest management guides have been properly used and consistently applied;
- (c) identified exceptions are acceptable;
- (d) planning team decisions and previously endorsed sections of the FMP;
- (e) the consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft FMP; and
- (f) the plan is complete, calculations are correct, and that the plan is understandable by those who must refer to, implement, and monitor the implementation of the plan.

1.3.7.1 Ministry's list of required alterations

The product of the Ministry review is a draft final list of required alterations, with the reasons for the required alterations. Required alterations will be consistent with the Ministry's legal obligations, such as the Ministry's duty to consult and accommodate adverse impacts to asserted or established Aboriginal or treaty rights as well as requirements in the FMPM and/or other relevant policy direction (e.g., Crown land use direction) and other agreements or obligations (e.g., MNRF agreements with Indigenous peoples). The list is a compilation of required alterations from Ministry reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the LCC.

The Ministry person designated as coordinator in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2) will coordinate and prepare the draft list of required alterations. Plan reviewers will prioritize their review of the draft FMP and provide comments as early as possible to the coordinator. The coordinator will provide the plan author with the draft list of required alterations at specific stages of the review period in accordance with the approved project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2). The coordinator, with assistance of the plan reviewers and plan author, will prepare the final draft list of required alterations during the last 20 days of the period for the review of the draft FMP.

Following the First Nation and Métis community, and public review of the draft FMP, the plan author and the Ministry will compile comments that were received from each First Nation and Métis community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 3.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 3.5. The Ministry will also compile comments that were received from the public.

Normally, within 5 days of the completion of the First Nation and Métis, and public review of the draft FMP, the plan author and planning team will review the comments from First Nation and Métis communities and the public, and determine if any changes or additions are required to the draft final list of required alterations. The list will now become the final list of required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether to incorporate comments from First Nation and Métis communities and the public in the final list of required alterations, the Ministry district manager will decide. An issue resolution decision (Part A, Section 2.4.1) made during the First Nation and Métis community, and public review of the draft FMP will be reflected in the final list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to the manipulation of forest cover will be certified by a Ministry registered professional forester.

Under the authority of the Ministry regional resources manager, the Ministry will provide the final list of required alterations to:

- (a) the sustainable forest licensee;
- (b) the plan author;

- (c) First Nation and Métis communities; and
- (d) the LCC.

Under the authority of the Ministry district manager, the Ministry will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address changes requested to the proposed management direction during First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and public review of the draft FMP to:

- (a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
- (b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the FMP by the Ministry regional director, in accordance with Steps 5 to 7 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.

1.3.8 Determination of sustainability

In the preparation of a FMP, the last step in the determination of sustainability involves updating the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), based on the results of the planning of operations, and concluding that the FMP provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term forest health) of the forest on the management unit.

If there is a deviation in planned types, levels, and spatial distribution of operations based on the review of the draft FMP a discussion of implications on objective achievement and the determination of sustainability will be required. If there are deviations from the draft FMP that have implications on objective achievement and jeopardize the determination of sustainability, adjustments to the proposed management direction will be required through the applicable planning, modeling and analyses.

The determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives and will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The determination of sustainability will consider:

- (a) the collective achievement of objectives;
- (b) the economic feasibility of the spatial harvest schedule;
- (c) the social and economic assessment; and
- (d) the risk assessment.

If the determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not achieved within the plan period, rationale will be required. The rationale will examine whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the desirable levels will be achieved.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

- (a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit, and discuss:
 - (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
 - (ii) the economic feasibility of the spatial harvest schedule;
 - (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
 - (iv) the risk assessment; and
- (b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the forest.

The final determination of sustainability will be submitted with the submission of the final FMP for approval by the Ministry's Regional Director.

1.4 Preparing for stage four – Revision and approval of the forest management plan

1.4.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft FMP, and Ministry review and approval of the FMP, in preparation for stage four of consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.4, 3.4 and/or 3.5).

During the concurrent Ministry review, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation (Part A, Sections 3.4 and/or 3.5), and public review of the draft FMP, the plan author may discuss the draft final list of required alterations with Ministry reviewers to determine how required alterations will be addressed in the revision of the FMP.

1.4.2 Preparation of the forest management plan and forest management plan summary

The FMP will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the FMP to facilitate the Ministry review (Part A, Section 1.3.7.1). The documentation will include a list of major changes to the draft FMP and will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the FMP to the LCC. After that presentation, the LCC will provide a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the FMP. The statement will be provided to the Ministry district manager for inclusion with the approved FMP that is available for public inspection.

If requested by the Ministry regional director, prior to submission of the FMP to the Ministry for review and approval, the plan author and representatives of the planning team, including the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the FMP to the Ministry regional director. The Ministry district manager, Ministry regional resources manager, and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

The draft FMP summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the FMP. A French version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French versions of the FMP summary. The FMP summary will be available with the Ministry-approved FMP that is available for public inspection.

1.4.3 Submission, review and approval of the forest management plan

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan in the format prescribed in the FIM. For those components of the revised FMP that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign the FMP in the format prescribed in the FIM. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the FMP.

The plan author will submit the revised FMP for Ministry review. The plan author will also submit documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revised FMP and submit documentation of any other changes made to the FMP between draft and final plan submission, to facilitate the Ministry review. A period of approximately 15 days is provided for Ministry review and approval of the FMP.

After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the Ministry regional resources manager, the Ministry district manager and regional resources manager will sign the Forest Management Plan in the format prescribed in the FIM, and recommend the FMP for approval by the Ministry regional director.

The Ministry district manager and regional resources manager signatures certify that:

- (a) the FMP has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM and the FIM and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant Ministry agreements with First Nation and Métis peoples); and has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides;
- (b) all silvicultural treatments in the SGRs which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guide(s) have been identified; and
- (c) all operational prescriptions or conditions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides have been identified.

If the Ministry regional director agrees with the Ministry's district manager and regional resources manager recommendations, the Ministry regional director will sign and approve the FMP in the format prescribed in the FIM. The approval of the FMP by the Ministry regional director confirms that the FMP provides for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit.

1.4.4 Distribution of the ministry-approved forest management plan

As described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, the Ministry-approved FMP, and the FMP summary (english and french versions) will be available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations and the public can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved FMP.

1.4.5 Stage four – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan

After the requirements in Sections 1.4.1 to 1.4.5 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.3.3.4, and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 and/or 3.5.

1.5 Availability of the approved forest management plan

The approved FMP will be available for public viewing at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. The English and French versions of the approved FMP summary will also be available. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved FMP.

1.6 After action review for the preparation of the FMP

An after action review (AAR) is a structured review or de-brief (debriefing) process for analyzing what happened, why it happened, and how it can be done better by the participants and those responsible for the preparation of a FMP. The purpose of AAR is to identify:

- (a) strengths and weakness of the planning process (e.g., what worked well, what did not work well, and why);
- (b) opportunities for improvement for the preparation of future FMPs on the management unit and across Ministry administrative region; and
- (c) opportunities for improvement to support future revisions to provincial policies (e.g., manuals and guides).

Within 30 days following the implementation date of the FMP, the regional resources manager will prepare an AAR and share any applicable information with the manager responsible for the Ministry's forest policy framework.

2.0 Public consultation

2.1 Introduction

The FMP will be prepared in an open consultative fashion. A LCC will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team in the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.2).

Opportunities for ongoing participation in the preparation of the FMP by First Nation and Métis communities (Part A, Section 3.0), interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public are provided through a formal public consultation process (Part A, Section 2.3). As described in Part A, Section 1.0, four formal public consultation opportunities will be provided during the preparation and approval of the FMP. In addition, First Nation and Métis communities and members of the public are encouraged to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the LCC during the preparation of the FMP.

A formal process is provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation of the FMP (Part A, Section 2.4.1).

2.2 Local citizens' committee

2.2.1 Introduction

A LCC, comprised of local citizens representing a range and balance of interests, will be established by the Ministry district manager, in accordance with the requirements of the CFSA, for the applicable Ministry district or management unit. The LCC will assist the plan author, the interdisciplinary planning team and Ministry in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

2.2.2 Purpose

The LCC will participate as an integral part of the preparation and implementation of the FMP by:

- (a) nominating a representative of the committee to serve as a member of the planning team, if desired by the committee. Other committee members may attend planning team meetings as observers;
- (b) attending joint meetings with the planning team, to be held at agreed-upon stages of the planning process;
- (c) ensuring that all local interests are effectively communicated to all others involved in forest management planning;
- (d) increasing the effectiveness of the public consultation process by:

- (i) participating in the public consultation process;
- (ii) providing advice to the planning team on the content and presentation of information at information forums;
- (iii) having representatives attend and participate at information forums; and
- (iv) providing advice on any additional public consultation opportunities that would be useful in the context of local circumstances and needs;
- (e) participating in a meeting with the planning team to discuss the desired forest and benefits;
- (f) participating in the development, identification and description of management objectives, strategies, problems and issues;
- (g) participating in the development of values information products;
- (h) promoting integration of all interests by participating in the evaluation of trade-offs which must be made during the planning process, and the resolution of problems, differences and conflicts as early as possible in the planning process;
- (i) providing opportunities to participate in the formal issue resolution process;
- (j) providing advice to the Ministry when discretionary decisions must be made (e.g., categorization of amendments, and issue resolution decisions);
- (k) producing regular reports of the committee's activities;
- (l) assisting in the monitoring of performance of plan implementation;
- (m) participating in the independent forest audit process by having the opportunity:
 - (i) to provide comments on the preparation and implementation of the FMP;
 - (ii) to identify concerns and issues;
 - (iii) to provide a representative to participate in field visits; and
 - (iv) to provide any other relevant information; and
- (n) providing input to the development of district insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0) by having representative(s) of the LCC(s) invited to serve on the interdisciplinary team which produces a district insect pest management program.

2.2.3 Membership and organization

The LCC will be a standing committee with members appointed by the Ministry district manager. Where a management unit crosses Ministry administrative boundaries, the Ministry district manager from the lead district will establish the LCC in consultation with the other Ministry district manager(s).

Normally, there will be a single LCC for a management unit. However, the Ministry district manager may establish additional LCCs or sub-committees, where a management unit encompasses a large geographic area with many communities.

The Ministry district manager and the LCC(s) will develop a protocol which describes how multiple LCCs or sub-committees will function. The protocol will address the roles and inter-relationships of the multiple committees or sub-committees in public consultation, development of the management direction for the FMP, preparation of local citizen's committee reports and independent forest audits. In the development of the protocol, identification of a lead committee will be considered. The protocol will be included in the terms of reference for the LCC(s) (Part A, Section 2.2.4).

The membership of the LCC will include local citizens representing a range and balance of interests from the communities within or adjacent to the management unit. The majority of appointments will be drawn from nominations provided by local interest groups. Persons directly employed by the sustainable forest licensee preparing the FMP are eligible to be members, but will not make up the majority of the committee.

Where they exist at the local level, the main interests represented on the LCC should include:

- (a) local business;
- (b) tourism industry;
- (c) anglers and hunters;
- (d) First Nation and Métis communities;
- (e) forest industry;
- (f) naturalists;
- (g) municipalities;
- (h) trappers and other resource users;
- (i) other recreationalists;
- (j) forest industry trade unions;
- (k) woods workers;
- (l) small independent loggers;
- (m) mineral sector;
- (n) waterpower sector;
- (o) chamber of commerce member or economic development officer;
- (p) local environmental groups;
- (q) local heritage groups or organizations;
- (r) other interest groups; and
- (s) the general public.

2.2.4 Terms of reference

Terms of reference for the LCC will be reviewed and updated at the beginning of planning for the FMP. For each management unit, the LCC(s) will develop a single terms of reference,

with assistance from the Ministry. The terms of reference will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The terms of reference will contain:

- (a) the name of each committee member and his/her affiliation;
- (b) the date of each member's appointment to the committee;
- (c) the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and individual committee members, including how each committee member will report back to and/or obtain input from the constituency he or she represents;
- (d) the process for selecting members, the term of service, and a description of how a range and balance of interests will be maintained on the committee;
- (e) key dates for the committee in the preparation of the FMP, (e.g., meetings prior to information forums and submission of draft and final plans, dates for committee reports);
- (f) responsibility for minutes of committee meetings;
- (g) required funding;
- (h) rules, developed by and for the committee, with respect to any procedural matters required to meet its responsibilities in forest management planning and plan implementation, including:
 - (i) how the chair of the committee will be selected;
 - (ii) frequency of, and attendance at, committee meetings;
 - (iii) development of agendas for committee meetings;
 - (iv) involvement in the categorization of amendments;
 - (v) attendance at information forums by committee members;
 - (vi) circulation of information among committee members;
 - (vii) selection of the committee representative who will serve as a member of the planning team;
 - (viii) selection of alternates for the chair of the committee, and for the representative to the planning team;
 - (ix) procedures regarding the declaration of conflicts of interest by individual committee members, and how the committee will address those declarations; and
 - (x) preparation of committee reports; and
- (i) when applicable, a protocol which describes how multiple committees or sub-committees will function (Part A, Section 2.2.3).

2.2.5 Administration

The Ministry may reimburse members of the LCC for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses in connection with their participation in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, in accordance with applicable government policies and directives. The Ministry may provide the committee representative who serves as a member of the planning team with a

reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings in accordance with applicable government policies and directives.

The Ministry will provide the necessary office support to the committee (e.g., secretarial support and typing of committee reports), to assist the committee in the efficient and effective conduct of its affairs. The Ministry will ensure that training material on the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and forest management planning matters, is available.

The Ministry will provide any available information reasonably required by the committee to the committee. This information will be provided as it becomes available, to ensure achievement of the committee purposes.

2.2.6 Reports and records

During the preparation of the FMP, the LCC will produce reports of its activities. Responsibilities for the preparation of these reports will be set out in the terms of reference for the LCC. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single committee report will be prepared.

The LCC report for the FMP will include:

- (a) a list of all members of the LCC, and their affiliations, if any;
- (b) the committee's activities during the preparation of the FMP, such as:
 - (i) the number and dates of committee meetings which were held during the planning process;
 - (ii) the number and dates for joint meetings with the planning team;
 - (iii) summary of training opportunities provided for committee members and recommendations for improvements;
 - (iv) participation in the development of the values information products and management direction for the FMP;
 - (v) participation in public consultation efforts (e.g., information forums); and
 - (vi) participation in the issue resolution process;
- (c) a discussion of the problems and issues addressed by the committee;
- (d) an assessment of the cooperation provided to the committee by the Ministry and the plan author;
- (e) an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee(s) structure and any recommendations for change; and
- (f) a discussion of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the FMP.

The committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:

- (a) stage two – a report of committee activities to date;
- (b) stage three:
 - (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP; and
 - (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft forest management plan summary; and
- (c) stage four:
 - (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved FMP; and
 - (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the FMP summary.

The reports and all other documentation produced by the committee will be available for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and public review. The final reports of the committee will form part of the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

2.2.7 Forest management plan documentation

Each FMP and FMP summary will contain a list of all members of the LCC, and their affiliations, if any.

Each FMP will contain a brief statement at the beginning of the plan that reports on the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan. This statement will be included in a format prescribed in the FIM. The statement will indicate that the committee's report is included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. In situations where multiple LCCs or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single statement that represents the agreement or disagreement of all committees will be prepared.

2.3 Public consultation requirements

2.3.1 Introduction

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at four stages (Figure A-1). The requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning are described in Part A, Sections 3.4 and 3.5.

2.3.2 General requirements

This section describes general requirements of public consultation. These general requirements address public notices, communications with the planning team and LCC, the Ministry's obligations to respond to public comments and submissions, the *French Language Services Act*, 1990 (FLSA), and the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* 1990 (FIPPA).

2.3.2.1 Public notices

Public notices will be issued at each stage of public consultation. The timing and contents of each public notice are outlined in Part A, Sections 2.3.3. The information that will be available at each stage of public consultation is also described. Public notices include direct written notices (e.g., letter, email), posted notices (e.g. posted on Natural Resources Information Portal) and media notices (e.g. social media), and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations on the Ministry's mailing list. At a minimum, the mailing list will include:

- (a) local and regional offices of relevant government ministries and agencies, and their successors, and in particular:
 - (i) local school boards;
 - (ii) local medical officers of health;
 - (iii) each municipality and planning board, and where appropriate, local services board and Chamber of Commerce;
 - (iv) manager, Operational Services, regional office, Ministry of Transportation;
 - (v) provincial programs engineer, Hydro One;
 - (vi) regional office, MECP;

- (vii) Manager, Heritage Program Unit Ministry of Tourism, Culture and Sport;
- (viii) Manager, Northern Policy and Planning Unit, Ministry of Tourism, Culture Sport;
- (ix) regional office, Ministry of Northern Development;
- (x) Department of Indigenous and Northern Affairs (Canada);
- (xi) Department of Fisheries and Oceans (Canada) – Central and Arctic Region;
- (xii) Environment Canada – Ontario Region; and
- (xiii) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency – Ontario Region;
- (b) each First Nation and Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the preparation and implementation of the FMP;
- (c) other local Indigenous organizations;
- (d) holders of sustainable forest licenses for management units adjacent to the management unit to which the FMP would apply;
- (e) known local, regional and provincial organizations and associations with an interest in forest management planning for the management unit;
- (f) members of the LCC; and
- (g) individual members of the public with a known interest in forest management planning for the management unit, including those people who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the 10-year period of the FMP, such as private land owners, tourist operators and trappers.

The Ministry will make all reasonable efforts to identify individuals who may be directly affected, by means such as direct contact and consulting records of registered trapline areas and mining lands.

As additional First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, and organizations are identified, the Ministry will update the mailing list.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

Each media, posted and direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a portrayal of the management unit in accordance with the FIM;
- (b) a link to the information on the Ontario Government website on how to become involved in forest management planning to provide an explanation of the purpose of the stage of consultation, and its relationship to other stages;
- (c) a description of the information available;
- (d) identification of the forum (e.g., information centre) for consultation, where applicable, including the location(s), date(s) and time(s);

- (e) a request for contributions to the background information (e.g., values and important ecological features);
- (f) a request for comments on material available for review;
- (g) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*, (1990) (FIPPA) which identifies:
 - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
 - (ii) information may be used and shared between the Ministry and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
 - (iii) a Ministry contact who can respond to any questions about the the collection and use of personal information.
- (h) the names of Ministry, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts and information concerning how to contact.

Additional content requirements of the direct written notice for each stage of public consultation are described in Part A, Sections 2.3.3.

Additional information forums

The planning team, with advice from the LCC, may choose to hold information forums in addition to the required information forum at stage two and the information forum at stage three, if required. If an additional information forum(s) will be held, a public notice will be required, and will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

Supplemental notices

For each stage of public consultation that involves an information forum, a supplemental notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind First Nation and Métis communities and the public of the information forum.

2.3.2.2 Planning team and local citizens' committee communication

The planning team will make reasonable efforts to communicate with First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public to seek their input into the planning process and to facilitate contact between them and the LCC. For example, the planning team will consult with affected trappers and recreationalists to identify recreational trails and trails used for accessing working traplines.

First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations can arrange for meetings with representatives of the planning team and the LCC at any time

during the planning process. Reasonable opportunities to meet planning team members during non-business hours will be provided.

2.3.2.3 Responses to comments

The Ministry, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing if requested, in a timely way, to written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of a FMP that relate to the proposed management direction for the FMP (i.e., strategic, tactical and operational planning components). The Ministry will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments that include a request for a written response. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered. All comments, submissions and responses will be summarized in the public consultation summary that forms part of the supplementary documentation of the FMP (Part B, Section 5.1).

2.3.2.4 French Language Services Act

The FLSA will govern the French language public consultation requirements for forest management planning.

At a minimum, the following requirements will apply in designated areas under the act:

- (a) all public notices in the English language will include a sentence, in French, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the French language;
- (b) public notices in the French language are required if there are French language media; these notices will include a sentence, in English, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the English language;
- (c) French-speaking staff will be available to assist the French-speaking public at all information forum or other consultation forums;
- (d) comment forms will be available in the English and French languages; and
- (e) written French language responses will be provided to all written French language comments and submissions.

For all management units:

- (a) the summary of the proposed management direction available at stages three of public consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.2 and 2.3.3.3) will be available on the Ontario Government website in the English and French languages; and

- (b) the FMP summary available at stages three and four of public consultation (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.3 and 2.3.3.4) will be available on the Ontario Government website in the English and French languages.

2.3.3 Formal public consultation

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at four stages in FMP preparation and approval.

2.3.3.1 Stage one – Invitation to participate

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to participate in the development of the FMP. This notice will be issued after the planning team has completed the necessary preparatory work, to enable the commencement of formal public consultation (Part A, Section 1.1).

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) to advise the public that the preparation of the FMP for the management unit is beginning;
- (b) to provide the public access to information to be used in the forest management planning process;
- (c) to request contributions to the background information (e.g., values and important ecological features) to be used in planning;
- (d) to request the public's views on the desired forest for the management unit, and desired benefits from the forest which can be achieved through the management of forest cover; and
- (e) to invite members of the public to meet and discuss their interests with the planning team, plan author and LCC.

Direct written notice requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a statement that encourages public involvement as early as possible in the planning process;
- (b) a statement that further information about the forest management planning process, and background information to be used in the preparation of the plan, is available for the period of plan preparation;

- (c) a statement that requests the public to identify concerns which need to be addressed during the planning process, to the plan author, the Ministry and/or the LCC; and
- (d) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the Ministry district manager or the regional director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

Information available

The following information will be available to the public through the appropriate Ministry office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:

- (a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report for the current approved FMP;
- (b) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies (if any), and the Ministry (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is supplied from the management unit;
- (c) the current values information for the management unit, including the resource-based tourism values information;
- (d) a list of the sources of the values information that will contribute to the preparation of the FMP;
- (e) a portrayal of the landscape pattern for the current forest condition in accordance with the FIM;
- (f) a portrayal of existing roads and/or road networks that will be used for forest management purposes, and for each road or road network to be used the responsibility assignment and existing information on the use management strategy;
- (g) information regarding the historic forest condition for the management unit;
- (h) the year six enhanced management unit annual report for the current FMP and the final year management unit annual report for the previous FMP;
- (i) the current FMP for the management unit;
- (j) current audits or reports prepared by or for the Ministry pertaining to the management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and information on how the public may access these documents;
- (k) sources of direction (Part A, Section 1.1.8.1), and information on how the public may access these documents;
- (l) and
- (m) a comment form.

2.3.3.2 Stage two – Review of proposed management direction for the FMP

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice, which invites the public to an information forum. This information forum will be held as part of the review the proposed management direction for the FMP. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on:
 - (i) the proposed management direction for the forest;
 - (ii) the areas which could reasonably be harvested, and the spatial harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods;
 - (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
 - (iv) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan;
 - (v) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year period of the plan; and
 - (vi) the proposed operational road boundaries for the 10-year period of the plan; and
- (b) to request contributions to the background information (e.g., values and important ecological features) to be used in planning.

Direct written notice requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at this stage of public consultation (i.e., the proposed management direction for the FMP);
- (b) a statement that the following information may be obtained at the information forum:
 - (i) a summary of the proposed management direction for the FMP;
 - (ii) the Ministry regional director's support for the proposed management direction, preliminary determination of sustainability and proposed operations; and
- (c) a portrayal, in accordance with the FIM, of:
 - (i) the eligible areas for harvest;
 - (ii) the spatial harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods;
 - (iii) the confirmed primary road corridors and alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;

- (iv) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads which are required for the 10-year period of the plan;
 - (v) the proposed operational road boundaries for the 10-year period of the plan; and
 - (vi) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan.
- (d) a statement that the information at the information forum will also be available for review for a 60-day period after the information forum;
 - (e) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
 - (f) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC;
 - (g) the projected date for the draft plan submission; and
 - (h) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the Ministry district manager or the regional director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

Information available

In addition to the most current versions of the information which were available at stage one of public consultation, the following information will be available at the information forum:

- (a) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (b) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);
- (c) a summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting;
- (d) a summary of the proposed management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.13);
- (e) the analysis package;
- (f) the Ministry regional director's support for the proposed management direction, preliminary determination of sustainability and proposed operations;
- (g) criteria for use in the identification of areas that could reasonably be harvested during the 10-year period of the plan;
- (h) information which:
 - (i) summarizes the land types for the management unit and the status of the forest and patent land Crown timber at the beginning of the period of the FMP;

- (ii) describes landscape guide forest units and planned forest units for the management unit;
 - (iii) summarizes the managed productive forest by plan forest unit;
 - (iv) identifies the silvicultural ground rules for the FMP;
 - (v) identifies post-harvest renewal transition rules;
 - (vi) describes the projected forest condition for the productive forest;
 - (vii) describes the projected habitat for selected wildlife species, if applicable;
 - (viii) describes the projected planned harvest area by plan forest unit;
 - (ix) describes the projected harvest volume by species group and broad size or product group;
 - (x) summarizes the assessment of objective achievement;
 - (xi) identifies and describes operational prescriptions for areas of concern and conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits;
 - (xii) identifies and describes the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee or other roads that will be used for forest management purposes;
 - (xiii) identifies planned harvest area;
 - (xiv) identifies planned harvest volume by species;
 - (xv) identifies planned harvest volume and wood utilization;
 - (xvi) identifies projected wood utilization by mill;
 - (xvii) identifies contingency harvest area and volume;
 - (xviii) identifies planned renewal and tending operations;
 - (xix) identifies road construction and use management;
 - (xx) identifies planned expenditures; and
 - (xxi) identifies planned assessment of establishment.
- (i) information which identifies and describes conditions on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits outside of areas of concern;
 - (j) Information which portrays:
 - (i) the spatial harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods;
 - (ii) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the plan; the eligible areas for harvest operations; areas of bridging operations (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the proposed contingency areas; past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current FMP and the previous 10 years;
 - (iii) confirmed primary road corridors;
 - (iv) alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
 - (v) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads, and planned operational road boundaries which are required for the 10-year period of the plan;
 - (vi) the proposed aggregate extraction areas;

- (vii) the proposed wood storage yards and operational standards;
- (viii) the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for individual, or groups of, areas of concern, and where required (Part A, Section 1.2.9.1), the environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;
- (k) the environmental analysis, including use management strategies, of the alternative corridors for each new primary road;
- (l) a summary report of the activities of the LCC to date; and
- (m) a comment form.

At the information forum, the summary information will be available for public distribution, upon request. In the material available at the information forum, MNRF will include a request for the public to provide additional information relating to important ecological features and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not portrayed.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information forum, and will be appropriately identified.

2.3.3.3 Stage three – Review of draft forest management plan

Stage three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to review and comment on the draft FMP. This information forum opportunity will be held concurrently with the Ministry review of the draft FMP.

Prior to issuing the public notice, the planning team and LCC will determine if a in-person information forum(s) is required considering public and stakeholder participation during previous stages of consultation, and any identified issues with the proposed management direction for the FMP.

The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment on the draft FMP. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft FMP.

Direct written notice requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a statement that the draft FMP and draft FMP summary are available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website during the 60-day public review period;
- (b) if applicable, a statement that the draft FMP summary may be obtained at the in-person information forum;
- (c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the LCC;
- (e) the projected date for Ministry approval of the plan; and
- (f) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the Ministry district manager or the regional director, and identifies the last date to request issue resolution (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1).

Information available

In addition to the most current versions of the information which were available at stage two of public consultation, the following information will be available through the appropriate Ministry office(s), the office of the sustainable forest licensee when the public notice is issued. If applicable, the information will also be available at the in-person information forum(s).

- (a) the draft FMP, including the supplementary documentation;
- (b) the draft FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.3.4);
- (c) if First Nation and Métis communities agree, the final Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3); and
- (d) a comment form.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will attend the information forum, if necessary, and will be appropriately identified.

The information will be available for review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee or appropriate Ministry offices, and on the Ontario Government website during the 60-day public review period. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations and the public can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the draft FMP.

Final list of required alterations

As described in Part A, Section 1.3.7.1, after the completion of the concurrent Ministry and First Nation and Métis community, and public review of the draft FMP, the Ministry will consider the comments that were received and produce a final list of required alterations.

Under the authority of the Ministry regional resources manager, the Ministry will provide the final list of required alterations to:

- (a) the sustainable forest licensee;
- (b) the plan author
- (c) First Nation and Métis communities; and
- (d) the LCC.

Under the authority of the Ministry district manager, the Ministry will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address the requested change to:

- (a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
- (b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the FMP by the Ministry regional director, in accordance with steps 5 to 7 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.

2.3.3.4 Stage four – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan

Stage four of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which advises the public that the Ministry-approved FMP is available for inspection. This notice will be issued upon approval of the FMP by the Ministry regional director.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the FMP has been approved by the Ministry regional director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the Ministry-approved FMP.

Direct written notice requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain a statement that the Ministry-approved FMP

and FMP summary are available for inspection for the 10-year duration of the FMP through the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website.

Information available

The following information will be available for public inspection through the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website:

- (a) the Ministry-approved FMP, including the supplementary documentation; and
- (b) the FMP summary (Part A, Section 1.4.2).

2.3.3.5 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

After public inspection, the approved FMP will be available for viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP through the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved FMP.

2.4 Issue resolution

2.4.1 Issue resolution process

There are times when a person(s) may identify a concern with:

- (a) the strategic (e.g., model inputs) and operational planning (e.g., planned harvest areas for the 10 year period of the FMP) components of the proposed management direction for the FMP;
- (b) the proposed operations in a long-term contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment or an insect pest management program.

When informal discussions do not result in a resolution of the concern, the plan author will advise the concerned person(s) of the opportunity to make a written submission requesting the formal issue resolution process.

Not every concern that arises in the context of preparing the strategic and operational components of the proposed management direction for a FMP, a long-term contingency plan, an amendment to a FMP (i.e., minor or major), or an insect pest management program, may be subject to the formal issue resolution process. Concerns that are not within the scope of the formal issue resolution process include concerns related to:

- (a) matters outside the Ministry's mandate;
- (b) land use planning; or
- (c) matters that would require a legislative or regulatory amendment, or a change in the direction or guidance set out in Ministry manuals, policies or guides.

These types of concerns may be considered by the Ministry on an ongoing basis, but will not be addressed through the formal issue resolution process provided for in this manual.

The Ministry district manager and/or regional director will determine if identified issues are within scope of the strategic and operational components of the proposed management direction in the preparation of a FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, or an insect pest management program.

There may be situations where numerous individuals identify the same issue(s) in their request for formal issue resolution (e.g., cottage association, municipality). When this situation occurs, the district manager and/or the regional director may determine that all or some of the requests be addressed together in an issue resolution meeting(s) and may specify the time, date, location and type (e.g., virtual or in-person) of such meeting(s). The district manager and/or the regional director will provide an opportunity for the concerned requestors to nominate a representative(s) to bring forward the issue(s) on their behalf.

During the preparation and review of a FMP for the 10-year period, if a request for issue resolution is received prior to the draft FMP being available for public review, the request will progress through two stages, if required, starting with the Ministry district manager, and if required, the the Ministry regional director. If a request is received during the period for public review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the Ministry district manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the Ministry regional director. The last date to request the issue resolution process will be 15 days after the completion of the period for public review of the draft FMP.

Each stage of the formal issue resolution process involves interaction among the concerned person(s), the plan author, the Ministry district manager and where applicable, the regional director, with opportunities for the participation of First Nation and Métis community representatives on the planning team and the LCC. For each issue, a written response including rationale will be provided to the concerned person(s) following each stage of issue resolution. The issue resolution documentation will be summarized and included in the summary of public consultation of the FMP. If the outcome of issue resolution influences the location or road use management strategy for a road, or a prescription or condition for an area of concern, the supplementary documentation for the road or area of concern will reference the summary of issue resolution that is included in the summary of public consultation of the FMP. Planning required as a result of the outcome of issue resolution will

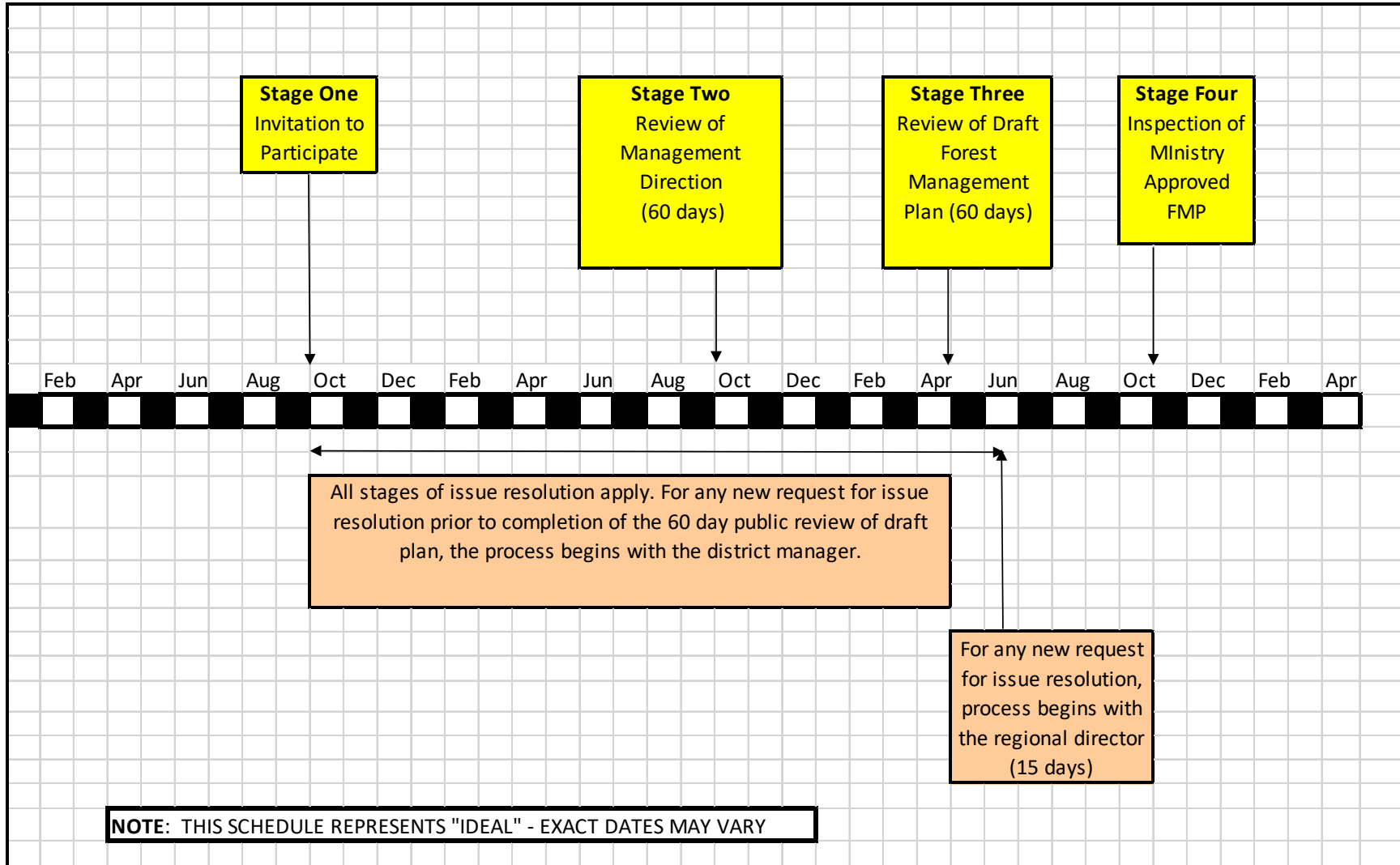
be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of the FMPM and the FIM.

Figure A-2 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process.

2.4.1.1 Ministry district manager stage

The Ministry district manager stage applies to a request received prior to completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP.

1 **Figure A-2: Overview of issue resolution stages**



2

Step	Process
Step 1 Request	The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the Ministry district manager, which includes a description of the issue, the concerned person's involvement in the preparation of the FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, or an insect pest management program to date (e.g., discussions with the plan author), and preferably, a proposed resolution. To facilitate scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.
Step 2 Meeting	<p>The Ministry will contact the concerned person(s) to confirm whether or not the identified issue will be considered, and if required, identify the date and location (e.g., Ministry office, video conference) of the meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve the issue. The Ministry will invite the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representatives on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC. If a meeting is arranged, the Ministry district manager will attend.</p> <p>If a meeting could not be arranged, the Ministry district manager will ask each of the plan author, the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the Ministry district manager.</p>
Step 3 Issue resolved	If the meeting resulted in a resolution on the issue, the resolution will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.
Step 4 District Manager Decision	<p>If the meeting did not provide a resolution, or the meeting could not be arranged, the Ministry district manager will provide a written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC and the Ministry regional director, normally within 7 days. Specifically, the district manager's decision will include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) a summary of the issue; (b) a summary of the requester's position, involvement in the preparation of the FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, or an insect pest management program; and (c) the district manager's decision with rationale.

Step	Process
	The Ministry district manager’s written decision will indicate that there is an opportunity for the concerned person(s) to request a review of his/her decision by the Ministry regional director within 15 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter).

2.4.1.2 Ministry regional director stage

The Ministry regional director stage applies when:

- (a) a concerned person(s) requests a review of the district manager’s decision;
or
- (b) a new request is received during the 15 days following the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft FMP.

Step	Process
<p>Step 5 Request</p>	<p>The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the Ministry regional director, which includes a description of the issue, their involvement in the preparation of the FMP, contingency plan, minor amendment, major amendment, or an insect pest management program to date (e.g., discussions with the plan author, district manager issue resolution), to date, and preferably, a proposed solution.</p> <p>To facilitate the scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.</p> <p>If the concern is being brought directly to the Ministry regional director without first being considered by the Ministry district manager, the Ministry regional director will determine whether the identified concern will be reviewed.</p> <p>If the request is to review the Ministry district manager decision the concerned person(s) will be required to provide rationale and any new information related to the concern.</p> <p>The Ministry will contact the concerned person(s) to confirm whether or not the identified issue will be reviewed, and if required the date and location (e.g., Ministry office, video conference) of the meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve the issue.</p> <p>Other persons known to be directly affected by the issue will be notified by the Ministry that a formal review of a specific decision in the draft FMP has been requested.</p>
<p>Step 6 Meeting</p>	<p>Normally within 7 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the Ministry will arrange a meeting of the Ministry regional director, plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and one or more members of the LCC, to seek resolution of the issue. If a meeting could not be arranged, the Ministry regional director will ask each of the Ministry district manager, the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, and the LCC, to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the Ministry regional director.</p>

Step	Process
Step 7 Regional Director Decision	The Ministry regional director will consider the results of the meeting and/or the written submissions, if applicable, the decision from the district manager, and produce a written decision on the issue, with rationale, normally within 7 days of the meeting. The Ministry regional director will provide a copy of the written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), First Nation and Métis community representative(s) on the planning team, other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the LCC, and the Ministry district manager.

3.0 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation

3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning. This section also describes the opportunity to develop customized consultation approaches for First Nation and Métis communities and the consultation requirements if a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation and Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through consultation with First Nation and Métis communities in forest management planning is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate accommodate.

Additional requirements regarding the involvement of First Nations in forest management planning for specific (e.g., Whitefeather forest) management units are described in Part F of this FMPM.

3.1.1 First Nation and Métis communities

For the purposes of this manual:

- (a) a First Nation community means a First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- (b) a Métis community means a Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- (c) traditional uses may include established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights.

For each community that Ontario understands as having established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights and is located in Ontario, the Ministry district manager will consider the following criteria when determining whether the community is a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to a management unit:

- (a) whether the community's established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights may be adversely impacted by forest activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.

- (b) whether the community has traditional uses that may be affected by forest activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.
- (c) whether the community has a local governance body or reserve in or near the management unit.
- (d) whether the community has expressed interest in forest management planning or forest operations specific to the management unit.

The Ministry district manager will make reasonable efforts to obtain information from First Nation and Métis communities for the purpose of determining whether they are in or adjacent to the a management unit.

The Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community at least nine months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the forest management plan to inform the community of the opportunities to be involved in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, including the opportunity to develop a customized consultation approach (Part A, Section 3.4). This communication will specify that the customized consultation approach can include some or all of the elements listed in Part A, Section 3.4 and that the consultation process set out in Part A, Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply if a customized consultation approach is not agreed upon.

This communication will be repeated, for those communities that did not respond to the initial communication, at least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process. At least one month prior to the commencement of the formal consultation process, the Ministry district manager will contact those communities that did not respond to either communication to confirm that the consultation process set out in Part A, Section 3.5 of the FMPM will apply.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, the Ministry may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

3.2 Planning team

When appointing members to the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2), the Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer an opportunity for a representative of the community to participate on the planning team. If a First Nation or Métis community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community's leadership.

In their role as members of the planning team, First Nation and Métis community representatives are expected to share information about the planning process with their communities and to represent their communities on the planning team.

The Ministry may reimburse the First Nation or Métis member(s) of the planning team for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, and may provide a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings, in accordance with applicable government policies and directives.

If a First Nation or Métis community chooses not to participate on the planning team, and a customized consultation approach is developed for the community in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4, the approach may describe how the community will interact with the planning team.

3.3 Local citizens' committee

When reviewing the membership of the LCC (Part A, Section 1.1.3), the Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to offer the opportunity for a representative of the community to participate on the LCC. If a First Nation or Métis community chooses to participate on the LCC, the representative will be identified by the community leadership.

In their role as member(s) of the LCC, First Nation and Métis community representatives are expected to share information about the planning process with their communities and to represent their communities on the LCC.

3.4 Development of a customized consultation approach for forest management planning

A customized consultation approach will provide for the involvement of the First Nation or Métis community in the preparation and implementation of the FMP.

If, in response to the Ministry district manager communications prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process, a First Nation or Métis community expresses an interest in developing a customized consultation approach, representatives of the community, the Ministry, and the plan author will work together to develop the approach. In the development of the approach, the First Nation or Métis community may choose to co-ordinate efforts with other First Nation or Métis communities, or seek advice from an Indigenous organization. An existing customized consultation approach may be considered in the development of the approach. Where the Ministry and the First Nation or Métis community have entered into an existing consultation agreement or protocol outside of the forest management planning process, the customized consultation approach will reflect the agreement or protocol, where applicable. The First Nation or Métis community and the Ministry need to agree to the approach, otherwise the consultation process set out in Part A, Section 3.5 will apply.

Normally, the customized consultation approach will be agreed upon by the community and the Ministry prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for a FMP (stage one). However, if a consultation approach is not agreed upon by the start of stage one, the requirements described in Part A, Section 3.5 will apply until an agreed upon approach is developed.

If an agreed upon customized consultation approach is developed, the consultation approach will apply during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If the Ministry and the First Nation or Métis community agree, changes to the customized consultation approach may be made during the preparation and implementation of the FMP. If an agreed upon customized consultation approach has been developed, but the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the approach, the following requirements will apply:

- (a) Part A, Section 3.5, for FMPs;
- (b) Part C, Section 7.0, for amendments to FMPs, contingency plans, and FMP extensions; and
- (c) Part D, Section 8.0, for annual operations.

The customized consultation approach for each community may address the community's involvement in some or all of the following:

- (a) the preparation of the FMP;
- (b) contingency plans;
- (c) FMP extensions;
- (d) minor or major amendments to FMPs;
- (e)
- (f) annual work schedules;
- (g) prescribed burn plans;
- (h) aerial herbicide and insecticide projects; and
- (i) insect pest management programs.

In the development of the customized consultation approach, the information and timing requirements of the formal public consultation process will be considered to ensure that the schedule for plan preparation and implementation is maintained.

The consultation approach will normally include requirements regarding notices, consultation forums, information availability, written responses to comments and submissions, and opportunities to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the LCC. The consultation approach will normally also address:

- (a) the primary contact person(s) for the community;
- (b) the preferred language for correspondence and notices;
- (c) specific information or summaries which require translation;

- (d) contents and formats of notices;
- (e) identification of Indigenous media which are used by the community;
- (f) a process for exchanging necessary information in a timely manner;
- (g) timing, notification, content and format of consultation forums such as community meetings or First Nation and Métis community information centres;
- (h) involvement in the preparation and review of the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1), including the First Nation and Métis values information, and the public availability of First Nation and Métis values information;
- (i) involvement in the planning of operations to protect First Nation and Métis values; and
- (j) involvement in the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3).

3.5 Proceeding without an agreed upon customized consultation approach

If a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community is not agreed upon in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, or if an agreed upon customized consultation approach has been developed but the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

For each notice required in connection with the preparation for a FMP, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and upon request, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in Indigenous media where available.

Each time a public information forum is scheduled, the Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis community information forum (e.g., information centre). At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis forum will be provided.

3.5.1 Forest management plans

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part A, Section 2.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

3.5.1.1 Consultation

Stage one – Invitation to participate

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.1, and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) an invitation to identify First Nation or Métis values and participate in the preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) and the community demographic profile (Part A, Section 3.6.2); and
- (b) a request to advise the Ministry if and how the community wishes to participate in the preparation of the report.

Preparation of the proposed management direction for the FMP

The Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the community to participate in the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

The Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a presentation of the proposed management direction, the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), and proposed operations for the FMP. If one or more communities express an interest, a presentation will be offered and those communities will be invited to attend.

The Ministry district manager will invite each First Nation and Métis community to participate in the planning of forest management operations to address identified First Nation and Métis values, the results of which will be reflected in the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3)

Stage two – Review of proposed management direction for the FMP

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.2, and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report and the community demographic profile;

- (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3);
- (c) a request to advise the Ministry if and how the community wishes to participate in the planning of forest operations to address identified First Nation and Métis values; and
- (d) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis community information forum, if such an information forum was requested by the First Nation or Métis community

A supplemental notice will be issued by the Ministry approximately seven days in advance of the information forum(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

Stage three – Review of draft forest management plan

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3, and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;
- (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft FMP, which may include the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part B, Section 5.1); and
- (c) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis community information forum, if such an information forum was requested by the First Nation or Métis community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by the Ministry approximately seven days in advance of the information forum to remind the First Nation and/or Métis community.

Stage four – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 2.3.3.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

3.6 Documentation

During the preparation of a FMP, a number of documents related to First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be prepared. These documents include a First Nation and Métis Background Information Report, a Report on Protection of Identified First

Nation and Métis Values and a Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement and Consultation. The Ministry shall seek advice from each First Nation and Métis community regarding the public availability of all or part of First Nation and Métis values information in those documents, having regard to the Ministry's legal obligations with respect to the management of information.

3.6.1 First Nation and Métis background information report

The Ministry will invite First Nation and Métis communities to identify First Nation and Métis values and participate in the preparation of the draft First Nation and Métis Background Information Report, or review and update the existing First Nation and Métis Background Information Report. Traditional ecological knowledge, where available and applicable to forest management, may be a source of information. The First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will include:

- (a) a summary of the use of natural resources on the management unit, particularly with respect to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting of wood for domestic purposes, and gathering;
- (b) a summary of forest management-related concerns;
- (c) a summary of the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of the report; and
- (d) First Nation and Métis values information.

Those values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities and that may be affected by forest operations in the management unit will be portrayed.

First Nation and Métis values information may include:

- (a) local governance body(s) or reserve(s) in or near the management unit;
- (b) areas used by First Nation and Métis communities, particularly with respect to hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic purposes, and gathering;
- (c) lands that have been identified as potential reserve lands for social, economic or capital development projects, or in connection with land claims or litigation;
- (d) sites of First Nation and Métis archaeological, social, cultural, and sacred significance, including First Nation and Métis cemeteries and burial sites;
- (e) areas identified by the First Nation and Métis communities during the archaeological predictive modeling process as having archaeological potential; and
- (f) lands or resources over which the community has made assertions of Aboriginal or treaty rights, including assertions of Aboriginal title.

Where assertions are included as part of First Nation and Métis values information, they will be accompanied by the following statement: *The inclusion/depiction of this information does not necessarily reflect the position of Ontario regarding the nature or strength of the assertion or constitute any admission or limit Ontario's rights in any way. In particular, the inclusion/depiction of this information does not constitute an admission by Ontario that the assertion engages the Crown's duty to consult or accommodate.*

Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information may not be portrayed.

Having regard to the Ministry's legal obligations with respect to the management of information, the Ministry shall seek advice from the First Nation and Métis communities regarding the degree to which, if at all, First Nation and Métis Values information should be made public.

3.6.2 Social and economic description

The social and economic description that will be prepared for the management unit, will include a demographic profile for each First Nation and Métis community (Part A, Section 1.1.8.2). The Ministry will contact each First Nation and Métis community to invite the community to participate in the preparation and review of the community demographic profile. First Nation and Métis communities may provide local level information or knowledge to further support the preparation of the demographic profiles for communities.

3.6.3 Report on protection of identified First Nation and Métis values

The planning team, with the support of the Ministry district manager, will prepare the draft and final Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values. The Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values documents how values identified in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) that may be affected by the proposed forest operations in the management unit have been addressed in the planning of forest operations.

In the preparation of the FMP, a draft report will be available at the time of public review of the management direction for the FMP for the 10-year period (stage two) and will include the following information:

- (a) a summary of proposed operations;
- (b) a discussion of proposed primary and branch road corridors of interest to the First Nation or Métis community;
- (c) the most current values information and First Nation and Métis values information;

- (d) a discussion of proposed operational prescriptions for specific areas of concern associated with identified First Nation and Métis values;
- (e) a discussion of how local First Nation and Métis values, including local First Nation and Métis hunting, fishing, trapping, harvesting wood for domestic purposes, and gathering have been addressed in the planning of forest operations; and
- (f) a comment sheet, and the names of a First Nation and Métis community contact person and a Ministry contact person.

The draft report will be available at the time of public review of the draft FMP (stage three), and will include:

- (a) the draft FMP summary; and
- (b) items (b) through (f) from stage two, including any update(s).

The final report will be available at the time of public inspection of the Ministry-approved forest management plan (stage four), and will include:

- (a) the final forest management plan summary; and
- (b) items (b) through (e) from stage two, including any updates from stage three.

During the preparation of an amendment to a FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by the Ministry, if forest operations proposed in the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

For a contingency plan, the planning proposal will identify the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part C, Section 3.2).

During the preparation of an AWS (Part D, Section 1.0), the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be updated by the Ministry, if forest operations proposed in the AWS have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

3.6.4 Summary of First Nation and Métis involvement

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement in the preparation of the FMP will be prepared by the Ministry. The summary will include:

- (a) a list of the First Nation and Métis communities, and the primary contact person for each community;
- (b) a list of the communities' representatives on the planning team and LCC, where applicable;

- (c) a summary of correspondence provided to each community;
- (d) a summary of participation in the desired forest and benefits meeting;
- (e) a summary of additional communication efforts with each community;
- (f) a summary of comments or input received from each community, and a summary of planning team responses;
- (g) a summary of First Nation and Métis community participation at public information forums (i.e., if conducted) and First Nation and Métis community information forums, if such First Nation and Métis information forums were requested by the community; and
- (h) a summary of the implementation of the customized consultation approach for each First Nation and Métis community, where applicable.

For those First Nation and Métis communities that agree, the Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft FMP, and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved FMP.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of a minor and major amendment to a FMP (Part C, Sections 7.2 and 7.3), preparation of a long-term contingency plan (Part C, Section 7.5), preparation of a FMP extension (Part C, Section 7.6), and annual operations (Part D, Section 8.0).

4.0 Preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's far north

This section of the FMPM provides guidance for the preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North. These forest management plans are intended to provide for a continuous and predictable wood supply to support local First Nation projects (e.g., bio-energy facilities). In circumstances where a community-based forest management plan will be prepared together with multiple First Nation communities the requirements of this section will apply.

A community-based FMP will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by a local First Nation community, communities or the Ministry. These FMPs will normally be prepared every 10 years and will include the management direction and proposed operations for the management unit. There are three stages of consultation during the preparation of a community-based FMP.

4.1 Community based forest management plans in Ontario's far north

4.1.1 Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning

This section describes the process to be followed and products that will support the the preparation of the FMP and be available for stage one of consultation. In preparing for stage one of the FMP the requirements of Part A, Section 1.1 to 1.1.8.14 will apply, subject to any modifications the plan author and planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon (e.g., necessity for a local citizen's committee, necessity to develop resource stewardship agreements), and subject to the modifications specified below.

The requirements for First Nation community involvement and consultation in the preparation of community-based forest management plans are described in Part A, Section 4.3.

4.1.1.1 Introduction

This section will describe the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information in preparation of stage one of consultation.

A description of the management responsibilities for the management unit will be prepared, including a description of the responsibilities of the First Nation communities, the Ministry, consultants, and other advisory groups if applicable.

4.1.1.2 Planning team

A FMP will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team. The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licensed under the *Professional Foresters Act, 2000*.

The the leadership of the First Nation community or communities, and Ministry district manager will appoint a interdisciplinary planning team, which is a working body, with all members participating in plan preparation.

The First Nation community or communities may create an advisory group (Advisory Group) comprised of individuals (e.g., elders, trappers, other land users) identified by the leadership of the community or communities. Any Advisory Group will provide input to the planning team. The process for planning team communication with any Advisory Group will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

Any Advisory Group is separate from, and additional to, representation on the planning team; however, if determined by community leadership, member(s) of the Advisory Group may also be a planning team member. Representative(s) on the planning team are expected to share information about the planning process with their community and represent their community on the planning team.

The the leadership of the First Nation community or communities together with the Ministry district manager will:

- (a) offer an opportunity for community member(s) to participate on the planning team (Part A, Section 4.3.3.2); and
- (b) appoint the project chair and project manager for the preparation of the FMP.

The leadership of the community or communities together with the Ministry regional resources manager will establish a steering committee for the preparation of the FMP. The steering committee will monitor the preparation of the FMP and will resolve issues and disagreements among planning team members to ensure plan preparation remains in accordance with the project plan. The steering committee will seek input from the planning team when resolving issues and disagreements among planning team members.

4.1.1.3 Terms of reference

The plan author, with the assistance from the planning team, will develop the terms of reference for the preparation of the FMP in accordance with the requirements set out in Part A, Section 1.1.2.1 of the FMPM, subject to the modifications specified below.

Submission, review and approval

For community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North, the plan author and a senior official from the plan author's organization will sign the draft terms of reference to acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization on the planning team. The draft terms of reference will be submitted to community leadership, district manager and regional resources manager at least 60 days before issuing the first public notice. The community leadership and Ministry will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within 30 days. If changes are required, the plan author will make the changes, obtain the signatures of the planning team members and the senior official of the plan author's organization, and submit the final version to community leadership, Ministry district manager and regional resources manager. When the changes have been made to the satisfaction of community leadership and the Ministry, community leadership, Ministry district manager, and regional resources manager will approve the terms of reference.

The terms of reference will be approved prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal First Nation involvement and consultation, and public consultation processes.

4.1.1.4 Project plan

The project manager, with the assistance from the plan author and planning team, will develop the project plan for the preparation of the FMP. The project plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements set out in Part A, Section 1.1.2.2 of the FMPM subject to any modifications the plan author and planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon (e.g., non-applicable responsibilities).

4.1.1.5 Assembly and update of background information

The project manager will coordinate the review and confirmation, update, or revision of the background information for use in the preparation of the FMP. The background information that will be available may vary across Ontario's Far North, depending on the location of the management unit.

The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation will be consistent with the information identified in Part A, Section 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information of the FMPM, subject to the modifications specified below.

Planning inventory information

The planning inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest management planning (e.g., forest resource inventory), including forest modeling. The plan author and planning team will develop a methodology for the preparation of the planning inventory to support the development of the management direction for the management unit.

Indigenous knowledge

For First Nation communities, Indigenous Knowledge may be part of the background information used in the preparation of the FMP. Indigenous Knowledge is the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of First Nation people.

Indigenous Knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites (i.e., values information), ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge may be documented in the values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10), and some may be documented in the First Nation Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

Many aspects of Indigenous Knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are intimately tied to language. Indigenous Knowledge is transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and teachings. To ensure Indigenous Knowledge is available for use in planning, another source of information will be the First Nation people, particularly the elders.

The approach to incorporating Indigenous Knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the First Nation Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

4.1.1.6 Stage one – Invitation to participate

After the requirements of Part A, Sections 4.1.1.1 to 4.1.1.5 have been completed, the planning team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of

Part A, Section 4.2, and First Nation community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.3.

4.1.2 Preparing for stage two – Review of draft forest management plan

This section describes the requirements for the development of the management direction for the FMP, and the preparation, submission and Ministry review of the draft FMP. In preparing for stage two of the FMP the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2 to 1.4 will apply, subject to any modifications the plan author and planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon (e.g., assessment of landscape pattern objectives), and subject to the modifications specified below.

Part A, Section 4.3 describes the requirements for First Nation community involvement and consultation in the preparation of community-based forest management plans.

4.1.2.1 Desired forest and benefits

Community leadership and Ministry district manager will host a desired forest and benefits meeting attended by the planning team, plan advisors, the Advisory Group and any interested community members. The purpose of the meeting is to inform participants of the background information and provide a forum for participants to share their respective interests in the management of the forest. The meeting will provide input for the development of objectives and identifying local desired forest and benefits for the local First Nation community.

4.1.2.2 Spatial management zones

Spatial management zones are geographical areas within a management unit that provide spatial context when developing the management direction for the FMP (e.g., strategic management areas and operational management areas).

A strategic management area may influence strategic analysis, tactical and operational planning. Strategic management areas may represent either strategic objectives (e.g., volume objectives) or other areas with distinct ecological characteristics. Strategic management areas may also be used to assess the spatial distribution of harvest over time.

Strategic management areas usually reflect objectives, and are defined during objective development and determination of strategic and tactical planning decisions.

The planning team may identify strategic management areas considering the following criteria:

- (a) balance of harvest in proximity to forest resource processing facilities;
- (b) accessibility of harvest (e.g., topography, existing road infrastructure, land use decisions);
- (c) consistency with strategic access strategy; and
- (d) additional strategic criteria applicable to the management unit (e.g., emulate natural disturbance).

If applicable, strategic management areas will be included in the appropriate planning inventory product in accordance with the FIM and represented in the model used to determine strategic and tactical planning decisions.

Operational management areas represent areas with distinct operational constraints (e.g., accessibility, wildlife, fisheries or other constraints on forest operations). Operational management areas may be used on management units with significant variation in forest level operational characteristics. If applicable, operational management areas will be included in the appropriate planning inventory product in accordance with the FIM.

4.1.2.3 Development of the proposed management direction for the FMP

Planned harvest area

The planned harvest area by plan forest unit from the strategic analysis (i.e., using the decision support system identified in the Terms of Reference) for the 10-year period is the harvest area for the FMP. Areas selected for harvest for the 10-year period will not exceed the planned harvest area by plan forest unit.

Adjustments to the planned harvest area during operational planning will be supported by analysis demonstrating the achievement of objectives (i.e., short, medium and long-term).

Management zones may be used to support the planning of operations and to address the spatial distribution of harvest areas through time.

The planned harvest area for the 10-year period will be selected from the eligible harvest area (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

The planned areas for harvest for the 10-year period will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM. All eligible areas that are not identified as planned harvest areas are considered to be optional harvest areas for the 10-year period. The optional harvest areas will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM, and may be ranked in order of preference.

The assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

4.1.2.4 Application of the forest management guide for boreal landscapes

The Forest Management Guide for Boreal Landscapes (BLG) is intended to be applied on landscapes larger than those identified to support community based initiatives. Specifically, the BLG is intended to be applied on management units hundreds of thousands of hectares in size, collectively being applied to areas roughly equivalent to ecoregions.

The BLG provides direction consistent with the coarse filter – fine filter approach to ensure biodiversity is maintained at the landscape scale. Landscape scale direction includes the concept to emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns which are fundamental principles of the CFSA. The BLG directs forest management plans to use explicit estimates of natural ranges of forest composition, structure and pattern for each management unit to guide strategic decisions of the FMP.

Management units in the Far North that are identified to support community initiatives are likely to be relatively small. Ranges of natural variation and detailed inventories required to forecast forest condition often will not exist. Where it is not possible to apply the BLG indicators the following direction will be applied.

Stand and site scale direction

Management units in the Far North are located in the area of the continuous caribou distribution. The BLG requires forest management plans that are within or intersect continuous caribou ranges to develop a tract-based dynamic caribou habitat schedule (DCHS). The intent of the DCHS in a FMP is to demonstrate and ensure a long-term habitat supply for caribou. The development of a DCHS in a management unit uses broad fire patterns in and around the management unit of interest focusing on large disturbances (i.e., 10,000 hectares and greater). The intent of the DCHS is to support the achievement of caribou habitat indicators while moving toward a landscape structure, composition and pattern that is similar to natural disturbances. The stand and site level direction for caribou includes direction to minimize the amount of residual forest within the harvest area - consistent with large intense fires.

Due to the small area of these management units the application of a meaningful DCHS is not possible. To minimize adverse effects to caribou while being consistent with emulating natural disturbance principles the planning team will:

- (a) focus the selection of areas for harvest with the intent of creating one large disturbance over the planning horizon;

- (b) minimize residual patches to mimic a large intense fire within areas selected for harvest;
- (c) ensure that all new roads constructed for forest management purposes:
 - (i) avoid traditional and potential high quality caribou habitat tracts when planning permanent roads;
 - (ii) adopt use management strategies and best practices consistent with caribou management objectives (i.e., minimize amount of road construction, increase normal skid distances, and regenerate where possible);
- (d) complete an assessment of caribou values and caribou use prior to finalizing areas selected for harvest. Priority will be given to the maintenance of known caribou nursery areas, wintering areas or travel corridors when determining areas selected for harvest; and
- (e) implement silviculture practices, using the silviculture guides and Indigenous Knowledge, following the completion of harvest that focus on maintaining forest composition consistent with pre-harvest composition. The focus of silviculture will be on maintaining levels of pre-harvest conifer at the stand level, avoiding opportunities for the establishment of elevated levels of hardwood (e.g. birch and poplar), and maintaining areas that are shrub and herb poor.

Landscape scale direction

Providing the fine filter direction is applied there is no requirement or need to apply further coarse direction. The fine filter provides direction on landscape pattern ensuring a large disturbance consistent with a natural fire is created and ensures that pre-forest harvest composition is maintained.

4.1.3 Stage two – Review of the draft forest management plan

Concurrent with the 60 day Ministry review of the draft FMP, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.2, and First Nation community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.3.

4.1.4 Ministry review of the draft forest management plan

This section describes the requirements for the Ministry review of a draft FMP for community-based FMPs in Ontario's Far North.

The Ministry regional resources manager will confirm that the draft FMP is complete before the commencement of the concurrent Ministry, First Nation and public review of the draft FMP. A period of 60 days is provided for the Ministry review of the draft FMP. The purpose of the Ministry review of the draft FMP is to confirm that the FMP meets the requirements of the FMPM and FIM subject to any modifications the Ministry and the plan author considered necessary in the circumstances, and also confirm items (a) to (e) in Part A, Section 1.3.7 of the FMPM.

4.1.5 Ministry's list of required alterations

The product of the Ministry review is a draft final list of required alterations, with the reasons for the required alterations. The Ministry's list of required alterations will be produced in accordance with Part A, Section 1.3.7.1 of the FMPM subject to any modifications the Ministry and the planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon (e.g., timeframes, distribution of required alterations).

4.1.6 Preparing for stage three – Revision and approval of the forest management plan

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft FMP, and the Ministry's review and approval of the FMP, in preparation for stage three of public consultation (Part A, Section 4.1.7).

The submission, review and approval of the FMP will be completed in accordance with Part A, Section 1.4.3 of the FMPM subject to any modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., timeframes).

The distribution of the Ministry-approved FMP will be completed in accordance with Part A, Section 1.4.4 of the FMPM

4.1.7 Stage three – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan

For the preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirement of Part A, Section 4.2, and First Nation community involvement and consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.3.

The approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP in accordance with Part A, Section 1.5 of the FMPM.

4.2 Public consultation

4.2.1 Introduction

Community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North will be prepared by the plan author and interdisciplinary planning team in an open and consultative fashion. Opportunities for participation in the preparation and implementation of the FMP by First Nation communities, interested and affected persons, organizations, and the public will be provided.

The requirements for a local citizen's committee as described in the FMPM (Part A, Section 2.0) will not apply for the preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North.

Formal public consultation will be provided at three stages; invitation to participate, review of the draft FMP, and inspection of the Ministry-approved FMP (Part A, Section 4.2.2). The requirements for First Nation community involvement and consultation are described in Part A, Section 4.3.

A formal process will be provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation of a FMP. The process is described in Part A, Section 2.4.1 subject to any modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances.

4.2.2 Formal public consultation

4.2.2.1 General requirements

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at three stages in the preparation and approval of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North.

The general requirements for public consultation will be completed in accordance with Part A, Section 2.3.2 of the FMPM, subject to any modifications the Ministry and the planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon. These requirements address public notices, communications with the planning team, the Ministry's obligations to respond to public comments and submissions, the *French Language Services Act*, and the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*.

4.2.2.2 Stage One – Invitation to participate

Stage One of public consultation will be completed in accordance with Part A, Section 2.3.3.1 of the FMPM, subject to the availability of the information, and any modifications the Ministry and the planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon.

4.2.2.3 Stage two – Review of draft forest management plan

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information forum. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on the draft FMP including:
 - (i) the proposed management direction for the forest, including:
 - identified management objectives, indicators, desirable levels and targets
 - areas that could be reasonably harvested, and the preferred areas for harvest operations for the 10-year period of the FMP
 - the analysis of alternative one kilometer wide corridors for each new primary road, if any, which are required for the next 20 years
 - (ii) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the 10-year period of the FMP;
 - (iii) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the 10-year period of the FMP;
 - (iv) the proposed operational road boundaries for the 10-year period of the FMP;
 - (v) the proposed silvicultural ground rules;
 - (vi) the proposed operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern and important ecological features; and
 - (vii) the proposed use management strategies for roads or networks of roads or other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes.

Direct written notice requirements

In addition to the public notice requirements as described in Part A, Section 2.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain the content requirements identified in Part A, Section 2.3.3.3.

Information available

Information will be made available to the public through the appropriate Ministry office(s). Information to be made available will be the most current version of information requirements identified in Part A, Sections 2.3.3.2, and 2.3.3.3 of the FMPM, subject to any modifications the Ministry and the planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon.

4.2.2.4 Stage three – Inspection of the ministry-approved forest management plan

Stage three of public consultation will be completed in accordance with Part A, Section 2.3.3.4 of the FMPM.

4.2.3 Availability of the approved forest management plan

The approved FMP will be available for public viewing for the 10-year period of the FMP in accordance with Part A, Section 2.3.3.5 of the FMPM.

4.3 First Nation community involvement and consultation

4.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation communities in the preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through consultation with First Nation communities in forest management planning is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate accommodate.

4.3.2 First Nation communities

For the purposes of the preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North:

- (a) A First Nation community means a First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with this section of the manual.
- (b) Traditional uses may include established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights.

For each community that Ontario understands as having established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights and is located in Ontario, the Ministry district manager will consider the following criteria when determining whether the community is a First Nation community in or adjacent to a management unit:

- (a) whether the community's established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights may be adversely impacted by forest activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.
- (b) whether the community has traditional uses that may be affected by forest activities, governed by this manual, in the management unit.
- (c) whether the community has a local governance body or reserve in or near the management unit.
- (d) whether the community has expressed interest in forest management planning or forest operations specific to the management unit.

The Ministry district manager will make reasonable efforts to obtain information from First Nation communities for the purpose of determining whether they are in or adjacent to the a management unit.

4.3.3 First Nation consultation

The Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation community at least one month prior to the commencement of the process for the preparation of the FMP to inform the community of the opportunities to be involved in the preparation and implementation of the FMP, including the opportunity communicate directly with the planning team.

The requirements for Stage One and Stage Four of consultation in Part A, Section 3.5.1.1 of the FMPM will apply in addition to the formal public consultation requirements of Part A, Section 4.2.

4.3.3.1 Role of local First Nation community

Local First Nation communities may create an advisory group (Advisory Group) comprised of community members (e.g., elders, trappers, other land users) identified by the leadership of the community or communities. Any Advisory Group will provide input to the planning team. The process for planning team communication with any Advisory Group will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

Any Advisory Group is separate from, and additional to, any First Nation representation on the planning team. Representative(s) on the planning team are expected to share information about the planning process with the community and represent their community or communities on the planning team.

4.3.3.2 Planning team

Each First Nation community may have representation on the planning team. The leadership of the community or communities will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

4.3.3.3 Desired forest and benefits

Community leadership and Ministry district manager will host a desired forest and benefits meeting attended by the planning team, plan advisors, Advisory Group and any interested community members. The purpose of the meeting is to inform participants of the background information and provide a forum for participants to share their respective

interests in the management of the forest. The meeting will provide input for the development of objectives and identifying local desired forest and benefits for the First Nation community.

4.3.3.3 Documentation

During the preparation of the FMP a number of documents related to First Nation community involvement and consultation will be prepared. These documents include:

- (a) a First Nation Background Information Report; and
- (b) a Report on Protection of Identified First Nation Values.

These documents will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.6 of the FMPM.

The Ministry shall seek advice from each First Nation community regarding their interest in the preparation of these reports and public availability of all or part of First Nation values information in those documents having regard to the Ministry's legal obligations with respect to the management of information.

A Summary of First Nation Involvement in the preparation of the FMP will be prepared by the the Ministry in accordance with Part A, Section 3.6.4 Summary of First Nation Involvement.

Table of contents

Part B - Forest management plan content	4
Phase-in provisions	4
1.0 Introduction	7
2.0 Management unit description	8
2.1 Forest description	8
2.1.1 Historic forest condition.....	8
2.1.2 Current forest condition.....	8
2.1.3 Forest classification.....	8
2.1.3.1 Landscape guide forest units, plan forest units and analysis units	8
2.1.3.2 Forest landscape guide indicator classifications.....	9
2.1.3.3 Other forest classifications	9
2.1.4 Forest resources.....	9
2.1.4.1 Inventories and information for species at risk.....	9
2.1.4.2 Fish and wildlife inventories	10
2.1.4.3 Values information.....	10
2.1.4.4 Industrial wood requirements	12
2.2 Social and economic description	12
2.2.1 Overview of social and economic context	12
2.2.2 Summary of demographic profiles.....	12
2.2.3 Industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest	12
2.3 First Nation and Métis background information report	13
3.0 Development of the management direction for the FMP.....	15
3.1 Introduction	15
3.2 Management considerations	15
3.3 Base model.....	15
3.3.1 Analysis of past silvicultural outcomes	15
3.4 Desired forest and benefits.....	16
3.5 Spatial management zones.....	16
3.6 Objectives and indicators.....	16
3.7 Management direction - Strategic planning.....	17
3.8 Management direction - Tactical planning.....	18
3.9 Assessment of objective achievement	19
3.10 Assessment of spatial harvest schedule	19
3.11 Social and economic assessment.....	19
3.12 Risk assessment	20
3.13 Operational planning	20
3.13.1 Introduction	20
3.13.2 Prescriptions for operations.....	20
3.13.2.1 Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.....	20

3.13.2.2	Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern information products	21
3.13.3	Prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending areas.....	21
3.13.3.1	Silvicultural ground rules	21
3.13.3.2	Conditions for important ecological features.....	22
3.14	Harvest operations	23
3.14.1	Harvest areas	23
3.14.2	Completion of on-going harvest operations from previous plan	24
3.14.3	Harvest volume	25
3.14.4	Wood utilization.....	25
3.14.5	Salvage and harvest of low volume stands.....	26
3.14.6	Contingency area and volume	26
3.14.7	Harvest area information products	26
3.15	Renewal and tending operations.....	26
3.15.1	Renewal and tending areas.....	26
3.15.2	Renewal support	27
3.16	Roads.....	27
3.16.1	Primary and branch roads.....	27
3.16.2	Operational roads	29
3.16.3	Area of concern crossings - Primary and branch roads	29
3.16.4	Area of concern crossings - Operational roads.....	30
3.16.5	Existing roads	30
Conditions on existing roads and landings	31	
3.16.5.1	Road information products.....	31
3.16.6	Road water crossings	32
3.16.7	Road decommissioning	32
3.16.8	Primary and branch road transfers.....	32
3.16.7	Forestry aggregate pits	33
Conditions on forestry aggregate pits	33	
3.16.7.1	Aggregate extraction areas information products	33
3.16.8	Wood storage yards.....	33
3.16.8.1	Wood storage yards information products	34
3.17	Expenditures	34
3.18	Monitoring and assessment	34
3.18.1	Forest operations inspections.....	34
3.18.2	Exceptions	35
3.18.3	Assessment of regeneration	35
3.18.4	Roads and water crossings.....	36
3.19	Wildland fire prevention, preparedness and mitigation	36
4.0	Determination of sustainability	37
5.0	Documentation	38
5.1	Supplementary documentation.....	38
5.2	Other documentation	39

6.0 Forest management plan summary 40

Part B - Forest management plan content

Part B of this manual describes the content requirements and is a template for writing the forest management plan (FMP). An FMP is comprised of text, information products (e.g., tables and maps) and supplementary documentation.

The Forest Information Manual (FIM) and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products (e.g., maps, tables) to be included in the FMP.

During the preparation, review and approval of the FMP, the documentation requirements of Part B will apply.

For the preparation of community-based forest management plans in Ontario's Far North the documentation requirements of Part B will apply. Documentation requirements for the FMP will be consistent with the applicable requirements in Part A of the FMPPM, subject to any modifications the plan author and planning team consider necessary in the circumstances and agree upon.

Phase-in provisions

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2020 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPPM (2017).

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPPM (2017) except as follows:

- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules of the FMP, may at the discretion of the plan author, be prepared in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit.
- Where the effective date of a forest management plan is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2021 and there has been a delay in the preparation of the proposed operations and draft forest management plan beyond the effective date of this manual, the forest management plan will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of this FMPPM to the extent reasonably possible.

(a)

Forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2022 will be prepared in accordance with the following sections of this FMPPM:

- Part b, section 4.0 through 7.0

Subject to the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (FOSM) and the phase in provisions for the guidance and direction set out in FOSM's associated policies and related technical documents, silvicultural monitoring aspects, including regeneration standard parameters in the silvicultural ground rules of the FMPs prepared on or after April 1, 2022 may, at the discretion of the plan author, be prepared and conducted in accordance with the the previous approved FMP for the management unit.

Subject to the foregoing phase in provisions forest management plans whose effective date is scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2023, will be prepared in accordance with this FMPPM.

Forest management plan certification and approval page

The Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page will be located at the front of each draft and approved FMP. The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final FMP. For FMPs prepared by an organization other than the Ministry, the senior company official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The final FMP approval page will also be signed by the Ministry’s district manager, regional resources manager, and regional director. The FIM provides direction for the signing and submitting of approval pages associated with FMPs.

If the Ministry’s district manager and regional resources manager direct other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of a FMP, those people will certify the parts of the FMP that they prepared and indicate they have prepared those parts of the FMP in accordance with the FMPM. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in the FIM.

A list of exceptions will follow the title and certification page. The list of forest management plan contributors will follow the list of exceptions. The format to document the list of exceptions and list of forest management plan contributors will be prescribed in the FIM.

Table of contents

The table of contents will follow the list of forest management plan contributors. The table of contents will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

1.0 Introduction

The introduction will describe the purpose of the FMP and set the context for the FMP locally, regionally and provincially.

The FMP text will describe the management responsibilities for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.1.1). The FMP text will include responsibilities of the Ministry, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies that operate on the management unit, and any management implications of these responsibilities and arrangements.

The date that the present management unit boundaries were established and a description of any boundary changes since the last FMP was prepared will be documented.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the planning team terms of reference.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains a brief description of how the Ministry's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the FMP in the form of the SEV consideration document.

2.0 Management unit description

2.1 Forest description

2.1.1 Historic forest condition

The summary of the historic forest condition will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the summary of the historic forest condition.

2.1.2 Current forest condition

The FMP text will describe the forest and patent land Crown timber, as identified in the planning inventory and discuss the implications of patent land Crown timber and land type (e.g., large areas of non-productive forest within the management unit) on the development of the FMP. A summary of the land types for the management unit, that summarizes the status of the forest and patent land Crown timber at the beginning of the period of the FMP will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text (Part A, Section 1.2.2). The FMP text will discuss the implications of patent land within the management unit on the development of the FMP. The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the analysis package that summarizes the development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted.

2.1.3 Forest classification

2.1.3.1 Landscape guide forest units, plan forest units and analysis units

The FMP text will describe the landscape guide forest units used in the FMP. The landscape guide forest units, as directed by the forest management guide(s) that address the conservation of biodiversity at the landscape scale, will be identified in accordance with the FIM. The landscape guide forest unit information will be referenced in the text.

The FMP text will describe the plan forest units and analysis units used in the FMP and discuss their application in the FMP (e.g., reporting, succession). The description of the plan forest units and analysis units for the management unit will be identified in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.2.1) in accordance with the FIM. The analysis package will summarize how plan forest units and analysis units were developed. The FMP text will reference the analysis package information.

A summary of the managed productive forest land area of the management unit by plan forest unit and age class will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text. The production forest area that is available for timber production, and the production forest area that is, or is expected to be, unavailable will be identified separately. The FMP text will contain the reasons that production forest area is unavailable for timber production. The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start area by plan forest unit and age class, on the development of the FMP.

2.1.3.2 Forest landscape guide indicator classifications

The FMP text will describe the forest landscape guide indicators and the plan start forest composition, structure and pattern (e.g., figures and/or graphs) at the landscape level (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3). The forest landscape pattern will be portrayed. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map). The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start forest landscape pattern on the development of the FMP.

2.1.3.3 Other forest classifications

The FMP text will describe the other forest classifications (e.g., habitat for wildlife species) used in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.2.4). The FMP text will also describe any management implications concerning the other forest classifications on the development of the FMP.

Where applicable, a summary of the projected habitat for selected wildlife species on the management unit will be provided in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text.

Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of wildlife species will be included in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map).

The FMP text will describe the management implications of the plan start habitat on the development of the FMP.

2.1.4 Forest resources

2.1.4.1 Inventories and information for species at risk

Species at risk on the management unit will be identified. If applicable, the FMP text will describe classifications used to identify habitat for forest-related species at risk. The

contribution and importance of the management unit in supporting these classified forest dependent species of flora, fish and wildlife will be described. Where other resource management plans (e.g., recovery strategies and management plans for species at risk) or inventories for these species provide information on the extent and quality of the habitat, and population status, relevant to the management unit, the information will be described. The degree to which the quality or quantity of habitat for species at risk could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of forest-related species at risk will be included. The text will reference the information product (e.g., map).

Publication of information products for species at risk values may be detrimental to their conservation, in which case the information will not normally be publicly available.

The FMP text will describe the implications of species at risk species on the development of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.8.8).

2.1.4.2 Fish and wildlife inventories

The FMP text will describe the other fish and wildlife resources on the management unit, including a summary of available information on the occurrence of fish and wildlife species based on fish and wildlife inventory and habitat information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.7). The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The FMP text will describe the implications of the fish and wildlife resources on the development of the FMP.

2.1.4.3 Values information

The FMP text will identify and briefly describe the values information portrayed (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10), and how it was used in the preparation of the FMP. The text will include a list of sources of the values information and identify where the data is recognized as being incomplete or missing. The FMP text will describe the management implications of values on the development of the FMP. The values information will be included in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For resource-based tourism values and confirmed old growth forest communities (e.g., red and white pine), the FMP text will provide a brief description of the values information portrayed. The FMP text will include a statement that not all old growth forest communities will be managed for old growth values. An explanation of the reasons why any such

community will not be managed for old growth values will be provided in the text of the FMP.

The FMP text will describe the land uses on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9) and their implications on the FMP. The land uses include:

- (a) resource-based tourism areas;
- (b) mineral exploration and development;
- (c) public land recreation and cottaging;
- (d) trapping (commercial fur); and
- (e) private land.

The FMP text will describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, national parks and forest reserves within the boundary of the management unit that contribute to the achievement of management objectives (e.g., social and economic, biodiversity). This description will include a list of national and provincial parks, conservation reserves, forest reserves, and the management emphasis for each protected area and the class of provincial park. In addition, the FMP text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within or in the vicinity of these areas.

The FMP text will also describe any other land use policy areas that are documented in the Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, such as enhanced management areas, that may have implications for forest management activities on the management unit. The FMP text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within these areas.

The FMP text will describe other uncommon or notable natural resource features (e.g., significant old growth stands, large wetland complexes) that occur on the management unit. The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources have been, or could be, affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The FMP text will describe the access condition on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11). For example, the text will describe areas that are currently accessed, roadless areas and areas where land use decisions have restricted access. The FMP text will describe the implications of the plan start access condition on the development of the FMP.

The FMP text will include a statement confirming the commitment of part of the FMP to maintain the viability of the tourism industry by protecting tourism values in the forest management planning process through the application of the Ministry's approved forest management guide(s) that addresses forestry and resource-based tourism and the use of RSA's as one method of protecting and sustaining these values.

2.1.4.4 Industrial wood requirements

The FMP text will identify and describe the projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.12), and how the projected industrial wood requirements were considered in the preparation of the FMP.

The FMP text will describe any management implications (e.g., wood supply, biodiversity) of the projected industrial wood requirements in the preparation of the FMP.

2.2 Social and economic description

2.2.1 Overview of social and economic context

The FMP text will list communities that derive substantial social (e.g., community stability, quality of life) and economic benefits (e.g., employment, municipal taxes) related to forest management activities, and First Nation and Métis communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

2.2.2 Summary of demographic profiles

The standardized demographic profiles for those communities identified in Part B, Section 2.2.1 will be summarized in the text. The summary will include information on:

- (a) population trends;
- (b) household income;
- (c) sector employment; and
- (d) employment by industry.

The summary will describe the importance of the forest to identified communities.

The FMP text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete demographic profiles.

2.2.3 Industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest

The FMP text will include summary information on the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest organized by sector. The sectors will include forestry, recreation and tourism:

The summary will include information on:

- (a) forestry and wood products, including:
 - (i) holders of overlapping licences and forest resource licences;
 - (ii) wood supply commitments and wood supply competitive process conditional offers of wood supply that remain in force;
 - (iii) the total volume of wood from the forest by conifer, intolerant hardwood, and tolerant hardwood, utilized by each receiving mill for each of the past five years;
 - (iv) destinations of sawmill residues (e.g., chips, sawdust) produced by local sawmills that use wood from the forest for secondary products,
 - (v) for the mills that receive a substantial amount of wood from the management unit, information on:
 - the types of products made;
 - employment (including mills, woodlands, woodlands contractors);
 - ownership of the mill over the past ten years;
 - recent major upgrades; and
 - any events such as strikes, fires, etc. that caused significant downtime.
 - (vi) the amount of Crown timber charges paid (sub-divided by stumpage payments, payments to the forest renewal trust and payments to the forestry futures trust), for each of the past five years.
- (b) recreational facilities and infrastructure available on the management unit such as campgrounds, and trails for snowmobiles, all-terrain vehicles, hiking, mountain biking, cross-country skiing;
- (c) recreation activities (e.g., hunting, fishing, camping, use of trails, snowmobiling, etc.) on the management unit; and
- (d) the resource-based tourism/hospitality industry on the management unit, including information on the number of facilities; the seasonality and type of operations; and accessibility (i.e., remote, semi-remote, drive-in).

2.3 First Nation and Métis background information report

If agreed to by the First Nation or Métis community, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will be included in the FMP as follows. The FMP text will summarize the use of the lands, and natural resources on the management unit by First Nation and Métis communities and forest management-related opportunities, concerns, and issues for those communities. The First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP. The text will

reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete report.

3.0 Development of the management direction for the FMP

3.1 Introduction

The FMP text will outline the components for the management direction for the FMP.

Additional documentation requirements for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

3.2 Management considerations

The FMP text will describe the management considerations and how these considerations affected the development of the management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

The FMP text will summarize the information used to identify the management considerations, the sources of the information and how the information was used to confirm or change past management direction.

3.3 Base model

The FMP text will identify that the assumptions used to develop the base model related to the land base (e.g., ecological zones, land use decisions), forest dynamics (e.g., forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the forest analysis and modeling task team and advisors to the task team are summarized in the analysis package. The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the information which supported the development of the base model.

3.3.1 Analysis of past silvicultural outcomes

The FMP text will describe the analysis of past silvicultural outcomes (Part E, Section 3.2) conducted by a registered professional forester and how the results of the analysis influenced the development of the growth and yield projections (Part A, Section 1.2.4.1), silvicultural options (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5) and post-harvest renewal transition rules.

The post-harvest renewal transition rules will be summarized in the analysis package in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the post-harvest renewal transition rules.

The FMP text will document any post-harvest renewal transition rules that are not consistent with the results of the analysis of past silvicultural outcomes. The rationale for adjustments to the default post-harvest renewal transition rules will be documented. If applicable, the FMP text will describe the monitoring program to be used to verify the assumptions used to rationalize the adjustments and will include:

- (a) methodologies;
- (b) timing and duration; and
- (c) documentation and reporting.

3.4 Desired forest and benefits

The FMP text will describe the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting. The FMP text will include a discussion of how the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) influenced the development of objectives, indicators and desired levels for the management unit. The summary of First Nation and Métis involvement, and summary of public consultation will summarize participation in the desired forest and benefits meeting.

3.5 Spatial management zones

If applicable, the FMP text will describe the following for spatial management zones (i.e., strategic and operational) (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1):

- (a) the intent of the spatial management zones; and
- (b) how the spatial management zone(s) were incorporated into the development of objectives and indicators.

If applicable, the spatial management zones will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

3.6 Objectives and indicators

The FMP text will describe the assessment of objective achievement, including management objectives, indicators and the time when each indicator is to be assessed. The FMP text will document the desirable levels and targets for each indicator. The management objectives, indicators, desirable levels and targets, and the timing of assessment will be provided in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The information will be referenced in the FMP text. Where objectives relating to the management of forest cover have been established in other plans or policies, the specific plan or policy which is the source of those existing objectives will be stated in the text and the geographic area(s) that applies to those objectives will be identified.

The FMP text will also document how desirable levels and targets were established, in consideration of background information (e.g., industrial wood requirements), including direction in relevant forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.4), the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting, and the results of scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package with the inputs, results and conclusions for the development of management objectives and scoping investigations.

3.7 Management direction - Strategic planning

The FMP text will describe the strategic modeling (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) conducted to determine the location, types, and levels of activities (i.e., access, harvest, renewal and tending) required to manage forest cover to balance the achievement of management objectives. The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the identification of areas eligible for harvest (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The locations, types, and levels of activities required to manage forest cover in balancing the achievement of management objectives investigated during strategic planning will be described. The FMP text will reference the section of the analysis package that summarizes the technical analysis for the strategic planning components of the FMP.

The applicable 100-year projections for quantifiable objectives will be documented in the FMP. The projections in the FMP will include information specific to:

- (a) planned harvest area by plan forest unit;
- (b) planned harvest volume by species, and broad size or product group;
- (c) forest condition for the productive forest by plan forest unit;
- (d) forest structure and composition indicators (e.g., landscape classes) for the forest;
- (e) projected levels of silviculture activities; and
- (f) if applicable, habitat for selected wildlife species.
- (g)

The FMP text will describe the change in volume by species, and volume by broad size or product group from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change. The information will be described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected level of planned harvest volume will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the planned harvest volume by species, and volume by broad size or product group information.

The volume graph will also present projections from the previous FMPs, and the historic wood utilization for the management unit.

The FMP text will contain a description of the projected forest condition from the strategic modeling. The FMP text will describe the change in forest condition from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change in area of each plan forest unit. The information will be described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected area of each plan forest unit will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the forest condition information.

The FMP text will contain a description of the projected forest structure and composition for landscape guide indicators (e.g., landscape classes). The FMP text will describe the change in forest structure and composition from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change. The information will be described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected forest structure and composition will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the forest structure and composition information.

If applicable, the FMP text will describe the change in habitat for selected wildlife species from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change. The information will be described in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The projected area of habitat for selected wildlife species will be portrayed graphically in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the habitat for selected wildlife species information.

The outputs of forest modeling will be submitted with the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The technical analysis decisions made in the development of the strategic model will be summarized in the analysis package. The FMP text will reference the sections of the analysis package that contain the strategic decisions made.

The requirements for the information in the analysis package are described in the FIM.

3.8 Management direction - Tactical planning

The FMP text will describe the spatial harvest schedule for the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years) for each plan forest unit. The FMP will discuss the criteria, and tactical strategies (e.g., identification of compartments, access strategies, ecological or social pressures) used for the selection of harvest areas for the first four FMP periods and discuss any associated management implications. The spatial harvest schedule will include the proposed harvest areas for the 10-year period of the FMP and the FMP text will document that the areas scheduled for the the remaining three FMP periods are preliminary and may be revisited due to factors including new values information, natural disturbances, and results of consultation.

The FMP text will also describe the trends in available harvest area from the previous FMP, and the current FMP, and any implications of the spatial harvest schedule. The information will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The spatial harvest schedule over the first four FMP periods (i.e., 40 years) will be portrayed in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The spatial harvest schedule will include the identification and portrayal of the proposed harvest areas for the 10-year period of the FMP.

3.9 Assessment of objective achievement

For all management objectives and indicators scheduled for assessment during the preparation and approval of the FMP, the FMP text will document the results of the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The levels of objective achievement and their relationship to desirable levels and targets, including any differences, will also be documented. If the level of objective achievement is outside the desirable level for an objective, rationale will be provided. The results of analysis to investigate the balancing of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be described in the text. A summary of the projected objective achievement, desirable levels and targets in the management direction will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference projected objective achievement, desirable levels and targets information. The assessment of objective achievement will collectively consider the strategic, tactical, and operational planning components in the development of the management direction for the FMP, and the FMP text will discuss any implications on the planned operations for the 10-year period of the FMP.

The FMP text will describe how objectives and indicators to be assessed during FMP implementation will be assessed. The FMP text will also describe how scheduled forest management activities related to these objectives and indicators will contribute to overall objective achievement.

3.10 Assessment of spatial harvest schedule

The FMP text will document the methods and criteria used to assess the feasibility of the spatial harvest schedule (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will describe how the spatial harvest schedule over the first four FMP periods provides for a spatially and economically feasible harvest. The text will discuss any implications of the spatial harvest schedule on the FMP being prepared and future FMP.

3.11 Social and economic assessment

The FMP text will document the methodology used to assess the social and economic impacts of implementing the the proposed harvest areas identified from the spatial harvest schedule for the 10-year period of the FMP. The FMP text will describe the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the 10-year FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP

text will also describe how the quantity of harvest volume supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities, the forest sector, wood product users, and non-industrial users of the forest identified in the social and economic description (Part B, Section 2.2).

3.12 Risk assessment

The FMP text will describe the risks assessed in the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The FMP text will also document the potential implications on the achievement of management objectives (e.g., available volume, forest diversity), as determined through the risk assessment investigation(s).

3.13 Operational planning

3.13.1 Introduction

The FMP text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The text will describe the areas planned for operations for the 10-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.7).

Additional documentation requirements for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) concerning the planned operations are described in Part F of this FMPM.

3.13.2 Prescriptions for operations

3.13.2.1 Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern

The operational prescriptions and conditions for all areas of concern that were developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.9, will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference and describe the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern information.

For areas of concern prescriptions and conditions that required the completion of supplementary documentation, the text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the additional information, including comments from the First Nation and Métis communities, and the public. Any objections to an operational prescription or condition for an area of concern as a result of these comments will be recorded in the supplementary documentation. The responses to those objections will also be documented on the supplementary documentation. The format for the supplementary documentation is prescribed in Appendix III.

Any operational prescription or condition for an area of concern that differs from the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide will be identified as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 3.18.2) will describe the methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the operational prescription or condition. The exceptions monitoring program will also be identified in the supplementary documentation (Appendix III). The list of exceptions will be referenced in the Ministry's district manager and regional resources manager's certification and recommendation of the FMP for approval. The format to document the list of exceptions will be prescribed in the FIM.

3.13.2.2 Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern information products

The information products associated with operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

For candidate bridging areas (Part A, Section 1.2.8.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.2.8.2), the operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern from the current approved FMP may be used and will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. If determined by the planning team, operational prescription and condition information for areas of concern from the new FMP may be used for candidate bridging areas and second-pass harvest areas and will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

3.13.3 Prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending areas

3.13.3.1 Silvicultural ground rules

Silvicultural ground rules (SGRs) developed for the applicable plan forest units and/or analysis units - ecosite combinations on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.2.9.2) will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The FMP text will contain a statement that the prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending presented in the silvicultural ground rules will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally depleted areas that are salvaged and harvest in low volume stands for the 10-year period of the FMP.

The FMP text will include a discussion of how the SGRs reflect the silvicultural options in the base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4.5). The FMP text will also include a discussion of how the

analysis of silvicultural outcomes (Part E, Section 3.2) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the development of the SGRs.

The FMP text will describe the SGRs that will most commonly be used to regenerate each silvicultural stratum. The FMP text will state that the most common treatment package(s) in each SGR will be the most likely treatment. The FMP text will also contain a statement that this information represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of FMP preparation and will not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the SGRs at the time of implementation of operations.

If a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide(s) is included in a SGR, that treatment will be recorded as an exception in the SGR. The rationale for that exception will be provided. The FMP text will reference the monitoring program that describes the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 3.18.2).

If a silvicultural trial area is planned for implementation, the trial areas will be planned and implemented using the approved silvicultural guide(s). The rationale for the trial will be included in the FMP text and will identify the SGR to be used. The SGR for the trial area will be documented in the FMP.

The FMP text will state that the information products for harvest, renewal and tending operations required by the FIM will serve as the stand list.

The FMP text will describe situations where prescribed burns and aerial applications of herbicide may occur.

3.13.3.2 Conditions for important ecological features

Where a condition on regular operations, or a condition on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits has been developed for important ecological features through application of the Ministry's forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales these conditions will be documented in the FMP. Where conditions apply to a specific spatial management area, the text will identify the spatial management area and where it is portrayed.

Any conditions for an important ecological feature that differ from the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide will be identified in the FMP as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 3.18.2) will describe the methods that will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the conditions. The list of exceptions will be referenced in the Ministry's district manager and regional resources manager's certification and recommendation of the FMP for approval. The format to document the list of exceptions will be prescribed in the FIM.

3.14 Harvest operations

3.14.1 Harvest areas

The planned harvest area by plan forest unit for the 10-year period of the FMP will be selected from the spatial harvest schedule. The planned harvest area by plan forest unit for the 10-year period areas will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

The FMP text will contain a description of the criteria used for the selection of the planned areas for harvest for the 10-year period of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The text will document how the planned harvest areas reflect the strategic and tactical planning components of the management direction for the FMP and discuss the importance of each criterion and its role in selecting the planned areas for harvest.

The FMP text will include a discussion describing how the Ministry's forest management guide(s) were considered during the selection of areas for harvest operations for the 10-year period. The text will describe how the areas planned for harvest contribute to the achievement of objectives and targets for landscape pattern. Rationale for planned harvest areas for the 10-year period that do not contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern will be provided.

The FMP text will include a discussion describing how opportunities to mitigate wildland fire risk surrounding communities, assets and resources were considered during the selection of areas for harvest operations for the 10-year period.

The FMP text will describe any factors that limited the selection of planned areas for harvest, such as unresolved issues over forest resource use, habitat for species at risk, and the effects of these limitations on the balancing of forest management objectives.

The text will document input from First Nation and Métis communities, and the public that influenced the selection of planned areas for harvest.

The FMP text will describe how any minor deviations between planned harvest areas and actual forest stand boundaries (e.g., due to natural features or other features such as roads, and previous depletions) will be addressed (e.g., annual reporting).

If applicable, the FMP text will describe the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee and record the information in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information on the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee. The FMP text will include a statement that the approval of the forest management plan does not represent an agreement to make harvest areas available to a particular licensee.

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silvicultural system, the required area of stand level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in the Ministry's applicable forest management guide(s). The required area of stand-level residual will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide(s). Rationale will be provided in the text of the FMP for those instances when harvest areas do not follow the residual stand structure requirements of the applicable forest management guide(s).

For harvest related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

- (a) the eligibility of treatment(s);
- (b) the eligibility forest type(s); and
- (c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).

If area is identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D, Section 6.0), the area planned for harvest will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP text will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

3.14.2 Completion of on-going harvest operations from previous plan

The requirements for the planning of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.2.8.

For bridging operations the FMP text will:

- (a) identify and describe the level (i.e., amount) of harvest area for bridging operations by plan forest unit (i.e., based on subset of forecast depletions of the current FMP),
- (b) identify and rationalize the timeframe for completion of the bridging operations (e.g., adjacency to other harvest areas, selection or shelterwood systems, dynamic caribou habitat schedules);
- (c) identify the estimated volume associated with the bridging areas;
- (d) discuss any potential implications to:
 - (i) identified values (e.g., social, economic, environmental);
 - (ii) achievement of management objectives (e.g., spatial objectives);
 - (iii) spatial management areas, or large landscape patch direction; and
- (e) identify which operational prescriptions and conditions, silvicultural ground rules, road corridor planning and operational road boundaries from the current FMP or new FMP will be applied.

The new FMP will also discuss how the harvest of bridging areas will be considered in the preparation of annual work schedules and management unit annual reports (i.e., timing for reporting against current FMP) developed in accordance with the new FMP.

The FMP text will contain a description of any second-pass harvest areas, including the area and volume associated with those areas. Any restrictions on the timing and extent of these operations will be documented in the text.

3.14.3 Harvest volume

The planned harvest volume, for the 10-year period, will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Volumes will be summarized by net merchantable volume, and undersized and defect volume. The method used to estimate the volume for the planned harvest area will be described in the FMP text.

3.14.4 Wood utilization

The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization of the planned harvest volume for the 10-year period. The planned harvest volume will be recorded by utilization, volume type (i.e., net merchantable, and undersized and defect), product and species in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Upon request by an overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. Any volumes that are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements for the management unit will be identified as unutilized harvest volume. The text will also include a discussion on the sources of unutilized volumes (e.g., species, forest units, products), reasons for unutilized volumes (e.g., market conditions), and strategies to address unutilized volumes. Strategies to address unutilized volumes must not jeopardize silvicultural and habitat objectives in the FMP. Anticipated effects on the achievement of management objectives and progress toward the desired forest condition, if the projected unutilized volumes are not utilized, will be documented in the text. The plan text will contain a statement that projected unutilized harvest volumes remain available for utilization to support industrial proposals. The FMP text will reference the information on anticipated wood utilization of the planned harvest volume for the 10-year period of the FMP.

The planned harvest volume for each mill projected to receive wood supply from the management unit will be recorded, by volume type, product, and species in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

The FMP text will describe the industrial wood requirements for the 10-year period. The FMP text will include a discussion of whether or not the Ministry wood supply commitment levels were achieved and the implications (e.g., objective achievement) if they are not achieved. The FMP text will reference the information on planned harvest volumes for each mill projected to receive a wood supply from the management unit. If volume is projected to be utilized but it is not possible to forecast a specific mill, the FMP text will include a discussion of the potential markets.

The FMP text will include a statement that the approval of the FMP is not an agreement to make areas available for harvest to a particular licensee, or an agreement to make planned harvest volume available to a particular mill.

3.14.5 Salvage and harvest of low volume stands

The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas and harvest of low volume stands are described in Part A, Section 1.2.7.1. The FMP text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of salvage harvest operations and harvest of low volume stands. The salvage and low volume stand harvest area and volume will be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for salvage and low volume stand harvest areas.

3.14.6 Contingency area and volume

The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.2.7.2. The FMP text will briefly describe the purpose and function of contingency area for harvest operations and how these areas were identified considering harvest eligibility criteria (e.g., maturity of forest stands). The contingency area and an estimate of the volume will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for contingency area and the estimated volume for the area.

3.14.7 Harvest area information products

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

3.15 Renewal and tending operations

3.15.1 Renewal and tending areas

The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A, Section 1.2.7.3. The planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with harvest and natural disturbance will be summarized by treatment in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for renewal and tending operations associated with harvest and natural disturbances.

The FMP text will include a discussion of how the analysis of silvicultural outcomes (Part E, Section 3.2) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the planned types and levels of renewal and tending operations. The FMP text will also describe the planned levels of renewal and tending operations and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the FMP. The FMP text will describe supplemental treatments or retreatments, if applicable.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection will be submitted with the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two passes. The FMP text will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will achieve the silvicultural objectives in the FMP.

For renewal and tending related silvicultural trial areas the FMP text will describe:

- (a) the eligibility of treatment(s);
- (b) the eligibility forest type(s); and
- (c) any additional limitations (e.g., size, location, number).

3.15.2 Renewal support

The sustainable forest licensee's program for the collection of seed and the production of nursery stock, during the 10-year period will be described in the FMP text. A forecast of the volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by species), for the 10-year period will also be documented in the FMP text.

Tree improvement activities scheduled during the 10-year period to support the production of improved seed will be described in the FMP text, with reference to all seed orchards and other forest genetic sites and strategies.

The information products associated with the locations of tree improvement activities will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

3.16 Roads

3.16.1 Primary and branch roads

A summary of primary and branch road construction will be documented in the FMP text.

Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor including results of consultation and tactical planning, and associated use management strategy will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP (Appendix I). The FMP text will reference the supplemental documentation (Appendix I).

The rationale, including results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known affected persons, organizations and tactical planning for each new primary road corridor, and branch road corridor(s), and associated use management strategy, will be included in the FMP text. A common use management strategy may apply to a number of new branch roads.

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes will traverse a railway, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

The FMP text will identify primary and branch roads that will have access restrictions implemented during the 10-year period. If a use management strategy for a primary road restricts public access, the FMP text will reference the supplementary documentation that contains the rationale for the restriction (Appendix I). If a use management strategy for a branch road restricts public access, the FMP text will provide the rationale for the restriction.

Each planned new primary and branch road and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The length of road to be constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP will also be recorded in the FMP. The FMP text will reference the information for each new primary and branch road and use management strategy for each road.

Each confirmed primary road corridor and branch road corridor from the current FMP will also be identified and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with FIM.

Planned and confirmed primary and branch roads will be portrayed in accordance with FIM.

The FMP text will identify that where an existing roadbed will be used to support road construction, only the applicable one-kilometre road corridor will be portrayed in the FMP to support First Nation and Métis community, and public consultation.

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, or an important ecological feature, any conditions on the primary road, branch road or landing as described in Ministry's guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

3.16.2 Operational roads

A summary of operational road construction will be documented in the FMP text. The FMP text will contain a statement that operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes and are often decommissioned and/or returned to productive forest. Each operational road boundary, within which an operational road will be constructed, and the associated use management strategy for the road(s) will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information for operational road boundaries. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will also be provided in the FMP text.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes must traverse a railway, the rationale will be provided in the FMP text.

The FMP text will identify that where an existing roadbed(s) will be used to support road construction only the applicable operational road boundary will be portrayed in the FMP to support First Nation and Métis community, and public consultation.

Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, or important ecological feature any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in the Ministry guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

3.16.3 Area of concern crossings - Primary and branch roads

The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary or branch road corridor (i.e., planned and confirmed corridors), the conditions on construction of the road will be documented in the FMP. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in the FMP. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a primary road, the receipt of comments will be documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix III, Part B). The FMP text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the documentation.

If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by a branch road, the receipt of comments will be documented in the summary of public consultation (Part B, Section 5.1) for the FMP. The FMP will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the public comments.

The FMP text will include a statement that for each new primary or branch road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized with the submission of the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

3.16.4 Area of concern crossings - Operational roads

The FMP text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. For operational road crossings of areas of concern, the conditions on construction of the crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern, will be documented in the FMP. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in the FMP. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of public comments will be documented in the summary of public consultation (Part B, Section 5.1) for the FMP. The FMP text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the FMP that contains the public comments.

The FMP text will include a statement that for each new operational road water crossing to be constructed, the location, crossing structure and conditions on construction will be finalized with the submission of the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.3) in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

3.16.5 Existing roads

Existing roads or road networks to be documented in the FMP include roads that:

- (a) will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry¹;
- (b) are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A², Section 1.1.8.11, **except** for any roads and/or road networks that have been reported as decommissioned and/or are not scheduled for use during the period of the FMP, or are a shared responsibility between the sustainable forest licensee and another resource user or party.

¹ Roads under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry are those roads that fall within the definition of “road” under s.48 of the PLA. The Ministry does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

² This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

Existing roads and/or road networks will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The associated use management strategy for each existing road and/or road network to be used during the period of the FMP will also be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. Documentation of new or revised use management strategies, and the rationale, will be included in the FMP.

The FMP text will reference the information on existing road use management strategies including the transfer of road responsibility and decommissioning.

Conditions on existing roads and landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern for a value, or an important ecological feature, the appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing as described in Ministry guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, or an important ecological feature, conditions on the road and/or landing as described in Ministry guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

3.16.5.1 Road information products

For each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee as described in Part A³, Section 1.1.8.11, **except** for any roads and/or road networks that have been reported as decommissioned and/or are not scheduled for use during the period of the FMP, and other existing roads that will be used for forest management purposes and which are under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry⁴, information products associated with road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM

³ This includes private forest roads, as defined in s.48 of the Public Lands Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.43 (PLA), for which the sustainable forest licensee has occupational authority.

⁴ Roads under the jurisdiction and control of the Ministry are those roads that fall within the definition of "road" under s.48 of the PLA. The Ministry does not have jurisdiction over or administration and control of municipal highways as described under the *Municipal Act, 2001*, S.O 2001 c.25 or highways as described under the *Public Transportation and Highway Improvement Act, R.S.O 1990, c.P.50*

3.16.6 Road water crossings

The water crossing standards to be implemented, as described in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, will be documented in the FMP.

3.16.7 Road decommissioning

Each primary and branch road constructed during the 10-year period of the FMP, and any existing roads and/or road networks where decommissioning activities are planned will be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with FIM. Operational road boundaries where decommissioning activities are planned for the 10-year period of the FMP will also be identified and portrayed in the FMP in accordance with FIM.

The FMP text will document the agreed upon approach for decommissioning roads and/or road networks (e.g., conditions and arrangements), including the approach for decommissioning operational roads and/or road networks (e.g., silvicultural treatments, removal of water crossings, and deemed transfer of responsibility). The FMP will also identify applicable decommissioning activities for road and/or road networks based on the consideration of:

- (a) management objectives for the FMP;
- (b) use management strategies;
- (c) identified values;
- (d) applicable Ministry guide(s);
- (e) the results of consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, known affected persons, and organizations; and
- (f) potential preventive and mitigative measures

3.16.8 Primary and branch road transfers

Where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated intent to transfer responsibility for an existing primary or branch road during the period of the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.10.7), the MNRF will provide an indication of the management intent for the road or road network. The management intent will be documented in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

If the sustainable forest licensee plans to transfer the responsibility for a primary and branch road during the 10-year period of a FMP, the FMP text will include the process to complete the transfer of primary and branch roads (e.g., submission and reporting). Road locations to be transferred within the plan period, associated water crossings, road class(es), and use management strategy information will be identified in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

3.16.7 Forestry aggregate pits

The FMP text will include a statement that the criteria for a forestry aggregate pit apply as per Part A, Section 1.2.10.6 of this FMPM.

The operational standards for the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate pits, as described in Appendix V, will be documented in the FMP.

Aggregate extraction areas will be identified in the FMP as per Part A, Section 1.2.10.6 of this FMPM.

Conditions on forestry aggregate pits

The appropriate conditions on operations for forestry aggregate pits, as described in Ministry guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If a forestry aggregate pit intersects an area of concern, or important ecological feature, the appropriate conditions on operations, as described in Ministry guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), will be documented in the FMP.

If an existing forestry aggregate pit is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the FMP, and where the forestry aggregate pit does not intersect an area of concern, or an important ecological feature any conditions on the forestry aggregate pit as described in Ministry guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) will be documented in the FMP.

All existing forestry aggregate pits will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.2.3.4).

3.16.7.1 Aggregate extraction areas information products

Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

3.16.8 Wood storage yards

Wood storage yards will be identified and portrayed in the FMP as per Part A, Section 1.2.10.8 of this FMPM.

The operational standards for wood storage yards, as described in Appendix V, will be documented in the FMP.

3.16.8.1 Wood storage yards information products

Information products associated with wood storage sites areas will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

3.17 Expenditures

The FMP text will identify the projected expenditures (i.e., based on planned harvest areas) required for renewal and maintenance operations, and renewal support, and discuss the associated implications (Part A, Section 1.2.12). Rationale will be provided for the assumptions and ratios used to calculate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations.

The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will reference the information on expenditures and funding sources.

3.18 Monitoring and assessment

3.18.1 Forest operations inspections

The sustainable forest licensee's 10-year compliance strategy will be developed in accordance with the requirements of the Ministry's Forest Compliance Handbook. The handbook describes the forest operations inspection process, the requirement for the sustainable forest licensee to produce inspection reports, and the processes for managing operational issues that may be identified through compliance inspections. The 10-year compliance strategy will describe the methods, intensity and frequency of forest operations inspections, particular circumstances for which the sustainable forest licensee will conduct forest operations inspections (e.g., forest operations in, and adjacent to, areas of concern), and the submission of inspection reports to the Ministry. The 10-year compliance strategy will be included in the FMP text.

The FMP text will describe the Ministry's district program for auditing forest operations and conducting forest operations inspections. The FMP text will also describe how compliance performance on the forest will be communicated to the local citizens' committee (LCC) for their review.

3.18.2 Exceptions

The FMP text will summarize the exceptions monitoring programs to be conducted on the management unit. The full monitoring program that will be conducted will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

The monitoring programs for exceptions will include:

- (a) methodologies;
- (b) timing and duration;
- (c) documentation and reporting; and
- (d) the opportunities for LCC participation.

3.18.3 Assessment of regeneration

The FMP text will summarize the monitoring program to assess regeneration for naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including the information required to assess areas managed under the selection silvicultural system. The monitoring program will assess establishment of regeneration for harvested areas including salvage and low volume stands.

The monitoring program will assess the success of silvicultural activities in the achievement of regeneration and/or management standards contained in the SGRs. The Forest Operations and Silvicultural Manual provides direction regarding the standards for observation to assess regeneration.

A summary of the area planned to be assessed for establishment will be provided in the FMP in accordance with the FIM. The FMP text will include a discussion of the area anticipated to be assessed during the 10-year period. The FMP text will reference the information on the area planned to be assessed for establishment.

The full monitoring program will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP and referenced in the FMP text.

The monitoring program for establishment will identify the following:

- (a) assessment methodologies;
- (b) validation methodologies;
- (c) timing for assessments;
- (d) timing for validation; and
- (e) documentation, including the process to address areas not successfully established, and reporting.

3.18.4 Roads and water crossings

A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings to be carried out during the 10-year period will be provided in the FMP text. The description will include the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings, and the timing and frequency of the inspections to determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns. The planned monitoring for each road or road network will be recorded in the FMP in accordance with the FIM.

3.19 Wildland fire prevention, preparedness and mitigation

The threat to people, assets and resources is reduced by preventing the number of human-caused wildland fires and mitigating negative wildland fire impacts before incidents may occur. The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures to be implemented during the 10-year period of the FMP will be described in the FMP text and will apply to the entire management unit. These measures will address how the sustainable forest licensee will prevent the start of wildfires, and how forest workers will be prepared to take immediate action to suppress small fires. These measures will include any business practices and guidelines for industrial operations developed for fire prevention, preparedness, and suppression purposes. The Ministry's guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in the planning of fire prevention and preparedness.

The text of the section will include:

- (a) a description of how sustainable forest licensees will promote fire prevention (e.g., communication, equipment standards and inspections, monitoring compliance with the *Forest Fires Prevention Act*), including a description of how fire prevention efforts will increase during periods of high fire danger;
- (b) a description of how forest workers will be made aware of fire prevention plans and initiatives; and
- (c) a description of how forest workers will be trained to take part in fire suppression, to be considered "trained and capable".

If applicable, the FMP will discuss how potential wildland fire risk within or near surrounding communities, assets and resources was considered when identifying planned operations and discuss any implications on the management direction for the FMP.

4.0 Determination of sustainability

The FMP text will contain a conclusion on forest sustainability and include documentation as to how the FMP has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (Part A, Section 1.3.8). The conclusion will be based on the assessment of objective achievement, the spatial assessments on the planned harvest area, the social and economic assessment, the risk assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2), prescriptions and conditions for the protection of values, and conditions on regular operations for the protection of important ecological features.

If applicable, where there was a deviation in planned types, levels, and spatial distribution of operations based on the review of the draft FMP, the FMP text will discuss the implications (if any) on objective achievement and the determination of sustainability.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

- (a) describe how the FMP provides for the sustainability of the forest on the management unit and discuss:
 - (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which targets and/or desirable levels are not achieved;
 - (ii) the economic feasibility of the spatial harvest schedule;
 - (iii) the assessment of landscape pattern objectives on the planned harvest area;
 - (iv) the social and economic assessment; and
 - (v) the risk assessment.
- (b) provide a conclusion that the FMP has provided for the sustainability of the forest.

5.0 Documentation

The FMP will include supplementary documentation, which is a summary of information used, and the documentation of decisions and analyses made during the planning process. In addition, it will include documentation of information which, because of its sensitive nature, will not be included in the FMP.

Additional supplementary documentation requirements for specific management units (e.g., Whitefeather Forest) are described in Part F of this FMPM.

5.1 Supplementary documentation

The supplementary documentation of the FMP includes:

- (a) the summary of the historic forest condition (Part A, Section 1.1.8.14);
- (b) the analysis package that summarizes the inputs and assumptions used, and the results and conclusions of the technical analysis conducted, during the development of the management direction for the FMP (Part A, Section 1.1.7);
- (c) the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report(s) (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.1);
- (d) the Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (if First Nation and Métis communities agree);
- (e) the updated summary of First Nation and Métis involvement (if First Nation and Métis communities agree) (Part A, Section 3.6.4);
- (f) the social and economic description and demographic profiles (Part A, Section 1.1.8.13);
- (g) the monitoring programs for exceptions (Part B, Section 3.18.2);
- (h) the monitoring program for success of silvicultural activities (Part B, Section 3.18.3)
- (i) documentation of the planning of primary road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.2.6, and 1.2.10.1), and the locations of primary roads in areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.2.10.3);
- (j) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.2.9.1);
- (k) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of the plan that includes:
 - i a summary of all comments received, the consideration of those comments, and if the comments informed planning decisions (e.g., operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern, branch roads and operational road boundaries, area of concern crossings for branch and operational roads);
 - ii a summary of issue resolution (e.g., type of issue, stage initiated, resolution); and

- iii a summary of each stage of consultation including the desired forest and benefits meeting (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types of supplemental notices sent);
- (l) a report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation; the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change, if any (Part A, Section 2.2.6);
- (m) the final list of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.3.7.1) including a list of major changes from the draft to final FMP;
- (n) the planning team's terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1), and project plan; and
- (o) Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0).

The draft FMP will include the supplementary documentation available at the time of draft plan submission. The approved FMP will include all of the supplementary documentation.

5.2 Other documentation

The public correspondence related to the development of the FMP will be retained on file at the appropriate Ministry office. The Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the First Nation and Métis communities.

6.0 Forest management plan summary

A FMP summary will be prepared to facilitate First Nation and Métis community, and public review of the draft FMP and inspection of the approved FMP. The summary will be available at the prescribed locations (Part A, Sections 2.3.3.3 and 2.3.3.4) for the duration of the consultation periods. A French language version of the summary will be prepared. The LCC may provide advice in the preparation of the FMP summary.

The FMP summary will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the FMP for each item:

- (a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of the Ministry and/or an organization other than the Ministry, such as a forest company);
- (b) the names of the Ministry district manager and regional resources manager, plan author, and LCC contact;
- (c) a summary of the report prepared by the LCC concerning its activities during plan preparation and a statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan (for final plan only) (*NOTE: The committee will normally prepare this summary and statement.*);
- (d) a summary of the objectives and indicators;
- (e) a summary of road construction, harvest (area and volume), and renewal activities;
- (f) a portrayal of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations of new primary and branch roads, for the 10-year period of the FMP;
- (g) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the FMP;
- (h) for the draft FMP summary, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 60-day review period of the draft FMP to seek resolution of issues with the Ministry's district manager or during the 15 days following the completion of the 60-day review period with the Ministry's regional director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1); and
- (i) a comment form (for draft plan only).

Table of contents

1.0	Introduction	3
	Phase-in provisions	3
2.0	Forest management plan amendments.....	5
2.1	Introduction	5
2.2	Amendments.....	5
2.2.1	Review of amendment requests and categorization of amendments	6
2.2.2	Administrative amendments	8
2.2.3	Minor amendments	8
2.2.4	Major amendments.....	9
2.3	Amendment documentation	10
2.4	Amendment availability	11
3.0	Contingency plans	12
3.1	Introduction	12
3.2	Contingency plans	12
3.2.1	Contingency plan requests and contingency plan proposals	12
	Contingency plan requests.....	12
	Contingency plan proposals.....	13
3.2.2	Preparation of a contingency plan.....	14
3.2.2.1	Delay in approval of a forest management plan	15
3.2.2.2	Delay in preparation of a forest management plan	15
	Before completion of stage two of consultation - review of proposed management direction for the FMP	15
	After completion of stage two of consultation - review of proposed management direction for the FMP	16
3.2.2.3	Adjustment to forest management planning schedules	16
3.2.2.4	Unscheduled forest management plan renewal	16
3.2.3	Submission, review and approval of the contingency plan	17
3.2.4	Contingency plan availability	17
4.0	Early plan renewals	18
4.1	Introduction	18
4.2	Proposal for early forest management plan renewal	18
4.3	Ministry regional director review and approval	18
5.0	Forest management plan extensions	19
5.1	Introduction	19
5.2	Forest management plan extension request or proposal	19
	FMP extension requests.....	19
	FMP extension proposals.....	19
5.2.1	Submission, review and approval of the forest management plan extension request or proposal.....	20
5.2.1.1	Forest management plan extension request	21

5.2.1.2	Forest management plan extension proposal	21
5.3	Preparation of a forest management plan extension	22
5.3.1	Documentation requirements for a forest management plan extension	22
5.3.2	Submission, review and approval of the forest management plan extension.....	22
5.3.3	Forest management plan extension availability.....	23
6.0	Public consultation	24
6.1	General.....	24
6.1.1	Public notices	24
6.1.2	Responses to comments	24
6.1.3	French language services act	25
6.1.4	Issue resolution.....	25
6.2	Minor amendments	25
6.2.1	Public notice requirements.....	25
6.2.2	Information and maps available	26
6.3	Major amendments	26
6.3.1	General.....	26
6.3.2	Stage one – review of proposed operations.....	26
6.3.2.1	Public notice requirements.....	27
6.3.2.2	Information available.....	27
6.3.3	Stage two – inspection of ministry-approved major amendment	27
6.3.3.1	Information available.....	28
6.6	Contingency plans.....	28
6.6.1	General.....	28
6.6.1.1	Public notice requirements.....	28
6.6.1.2	Information available.....	28
6.7	Forest management plan extensions	28
6.7.1	Public notice requirements.....	28
6.7.1.1	Short-term forest management plan extension.....	29
6.7.1.2	Medium-term and long-term forest management plan extensions	29
6.7.2	Forest management plan extension availability.....	30
7.0	First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation	31
7.1	Introduction	31
7.2	Minor amendments	31
7.3	Major amendments	32
7.3.1	Stage one – review of proposed operations.....	32
7.3.2	Stage two – inspection of ministry-approved major amendment	33
7.4	Contingency plans.....	33
7.5	Forest management plan extension	33

1.0 Introduction

This part of the manual contains the planning requirements for amendments to forest management plans, contingency plans, early renewals of forest management plans, and forest management plan extensions.

The Forest Information Manual (FIM) and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products to be included in amendments, contingency plans, early plan renewals, and forest management plan extensions.

Subject to the exception stated immediately below, the requirements of Part C of the FMPM will apply, subject to any modifications the Ministry and the planning team or plan author consider necessary in the circumstance and agree upon, to an amendment, early renewal, or extension of a community-based FMP in Ontario's Far North, and to the preparation of a contingency plan for management units in Ontario's Far North.

Exception: None of the foregoing actions require the involvement of a local citizen's committee.

For community-based FMPs in Ontario's Far North, requirements for information products to be included in amendments, contingency plans, early plan renewals, and forest management plan extensions will be conducted in accordance with the FIM and applicable technical specification(s) subject to any modifications the Ministry and the plan author consider necessary in the circumstance and agree upon.

Phase-in provisions

The requirements of Part C will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM), except as follows:

- For Part C, Section 2.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
 - For plan amendments categorized by the Ministry district manager prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
 - For plan amendments categorized by the Ministry district manager after the effective date of this FMPM, those amendments will be prepared, to the extent reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0 of this FMPM.

- For Part C, Section 3.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:

- For contingency plan proposals approved by the Ministry regional director prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those contingency plans will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
 - For contingency plan requests or proposals approved by the Ministry regional director after the effective date of this FMPM those contingency plans will be prepared in accordance with this FMPM.
- For Part C, Section 5.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
 - For forest management extension proposals approved by the Ministry regional director prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those forest management plan extensions will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
 - For forest management plan extension requests or proposals approved by the Ministry regional director after the effective date of this FMPM those forest management plan extensions will be prepared in accordance with this FMPM.

2.0 Forest management plan amendments

2.1 Introduction

An amendment will be required to change a Forest Management Plan (FMP) or contingency plan. Part D, Section 3.5 identifies specific circumstances when changes during annual work schedule implementation do not require an amendment.

An amendment to a FMP may be prepared to the management direction of a FMP for the management unit. The plan author will prepare and certify an amendment and submit the amendment to the Ministry in accordance with the requirements of the FMPM and the FIM. The FIM provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages.

The Ministry regional director may require an amendment to the FMP if the regional director is of the opinion that the continued implementation of the FMP will not provide for the sustainability of the forest or to address one of the following:

- (a) a change in an Act or regulations or the application of the federal *Species at Risk Act* to a species or its habitat in Ontario;
- (b) a change in policy; and
- (c) a major disturbance (e.g., forest fire) that has occurred on the management unit.

In circumstances where the Ministry regional director requires an amendment to the FMP, the regional director will consult with the Ministry district manager to determine the categorization of the amendment.

The planning requirements for an amendment will depend on the nature of the proposed changes but will normally involve the same technical planning requirements as would be required in the preparation of a FMP. However, the Ministry review and approval requirements, and the opportunities for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and public consultation will differ dependent on the category of amendment.

An amendment to provide protection for species at risk will be prepared with the assistance of Ministry staff with expertise in species at risk.

2.2 Amendments

Any person can request an amendment by submitting a written request to the Ministry district manager. The amendment request will contain the following information:

- (a) a brief description of the need for, and nature of, the proposed amendment;

- (b) the rationale for the proposed amendment and a discussion of its significance (e.g., potential implications on the management direction); and
- (c) if new operations are proposed:
 - (i) a brief description of the proposed operations, and a description of the previously approved operations in the FMP or contingency plan that will be changed by the proposed amendment; and
 - (ii) an outline of the applicable planning requirements for the proposed operations, including any First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and public consultation, based on the planning requirements for similar operations in a FMP.

2.2.1 Review of amendment requests and categorization of amendments

The Ministry district manager, in consultation with the plan author, the local citizens' committee (LCC), or where applicable the Ministry regional director, will decide if preparation of the requested amendment should proceed, and the appropriate categorization of the amendment as administrative, minor or major. The Ministry district manager, in making their decision, will consider factors including:

- (a) whether the requested amendment will impact the strategic or tactical planning decisions for the management unit (e.g., large disturbances,);
- (b) whether the requested amendment is consistent with the management direction of the FMP;
- (c) whether a First Nation or Métis community's established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights may be adversely impacted by the proposed amendment;
- (d) the amount of planning required for the proposed amendment;
- (e) procedural matters identified in the approved Terms of Reference for the LCC (Part A, Section 2.2);
- (f) the amount of anticipated public or First Nation and Métis community interest in the proposed amendment;
- (g) whether there are legitimate time constraints that must be met for reasons of public safety, biological or industrial necessity, or public convenience and necessity;
- (h) requests of a similar nature;
- (i) the adequacy and relevancy of information available at the time of the request on values potentially affected;
- (j) the anticipated potential effects of the proposed operations;
- (k) the necessity to comply with new laws, any order of a court or tribunal, or any authorization made under a statute or regulation; and
- (l) the urgency to provide protection for species at risk under the ESA.

The Terms of Reference for the LCC (Part A, Section 2.2.4) may identify which requested amendments will be categorized as administrative (e.g., minor operational road boundary changes). These administrative amendments will not require further consultation on the categorization of the amendment.

If an administrative amendment is requested and the type of amendment is not identified in the LCC Terms of Reference, the Ministry district manager may consult the chair of the LCC, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

If an amendment is required to provide protection to species at risk, and the required changes are consistent with the management direction for the management unit, the amendment will be administrative to facilitate the expeditious planning to provide protection for the species and to allow for the continuation of forest operations.

If an amendment is required to permit salvage harvest operations as a result of a natural disturbance, the amendment will be administrative to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of salvage harvest operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood.

If an amendment is required to permit forest operations to proceed in contingency area (i.e., areas identified from term two of the spatial harvest schedule and with consultation completed) due to circumstances that caused some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable for harvest (e.g., wildfire, blowdown) (Part A, Section 1.2.7.2), the amendment will be administrative to allow for the continuation of forest operations.

If an amendment is required to add eligible areas for renewal and tending due to disturbance, the amendment will be administrative providing it is consistent with the silvicultural objectives.

If an amendment is required to ensure the completion of harvest operations associated with the previous FMP (e.g., forwarding of unscaled or stranded timber to roadside), the amendment will be administrative to ensure the completion of forest operations. Amendments to bridging operations involving the felling of timber do not apply in this circumstance and require an amendment request, review and categorization.

If an amendment is required to transfer the responsibility of a primary or branch road from the sustainable forest licensee to the Ministry and all conditions of transfer are completed, the amendment will be categorized as administrative unless additional changes to the existing use management strategy are required.

If an amendment is required to enable new advanced road construction in the current FMP (e.g., roads which provide access to proposed harvest operations in the new FMP), the amendment will be categorized as either minor or major depending on amendment request review and categorization. The amendment will be prepared in accordance with requirements described in Part C, Section 2.2.3 or Section 2.24. Where only non-contentious

advanced road construction operations are being proposed for inclusion in the current FMP, which were previously consulted on during the preparation of the new FMP, the amendment will be categorized as administrative.

The decision on the amendment request and the appropriate category of amendment will be made within 15 days of receipt of the request. The Ministry district manager will prepare a written decision which will include rationale for the categorization of the amendment. The decision will be provided to the amendment requestor, the LCC and the sustainable forest licensee. If the decision is to proceed with the amendment, the plan author will prepare and submit the amendment.

2.2.2 Administrative amendments

Examples of administrative amendments include corrections of errors or omissions in the documentation or information products of approved FMPs. Administrative amendments may also include changes to forest operations where First Nation and Métis communities, the public, and stakeholders have already been consulted through the preparation of the FMP.

The Ministry will undertake an internal review of the administrative amendment. This review may recommend approval of the administrative amendment as submitted or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the Ministry district manager, the Ministry will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the administrative amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the Ministry district manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The Ministry district manager or Ministry district supervisor will certify and approve the administrative amendment within 15 days of the submission of the complete amendment in the format prescribed in the FIM.

There are no formal First Nation and Métis, or public consultation requirements for the preparation of an administrative amendment. The approved administrative amendment will be available to First Nation and Métis communities and the public.

2.2.3 Minor amendments

If the Ministry district manager in consultation with the LCC decides that the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is minor, the consultation requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.2 and 7.2 will apply. The amendment will be prepared in consultation with First Nation and Métis communities, affected persons, and organizations, , certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the minor amendment, and submitted to the Ministry.

The Ministry will undertake an internal review of the minor amendment. This review may recommend approval of the minor amendment as submitted or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the Ministry district manager, the Ministry will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the minor amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the Ministry district manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The Ministry district manager will certify and approve the minor amendment in the format prescribed by the FIM. The approved minor amendment will be available for inspection (Part C, Section 2.4).

2.2.4 Major amendments

If the Ministry district manager, in consultation with the LCC, decides that the amendment should proceed and that the appropriate category of amendment is major, the amendment will be prepared with the participation of First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, and organizations.

As described in Part C, Sections 6.3 and 7.3, formal opportunities for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment.

After stage one of consultation as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.2 and 7.3.1, the major amendment will be prepared. The major amendment will be certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the major amendment and submitted to the Ministry.

The Ministry will undertake an internal review of the major amendment, in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.3.7), with whatever modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the major amendment as submitted or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. Under the authority of the Ministry regional resources manager, the Ministry will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the major amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the Ministry regional resources manager, as per the requirements of the FIM. The Ministry regional resources manager will certify and recommend the major amendment for approval by the Ministry regional director, in accordance with the same procedure as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.3), with whatever modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances.

The Ministry will prepare a brief description of how the Ministry Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993* (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the major amendment, in the form of an SEV consideration document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the major amendment when it is submitted to the Ministry regional director for approval.

If the Ministry regional director agrees with the Ministry's regional resources manager recommendation, the Ministry regional director will sign and approve the major amendment in the format prescribed by FIM. After approval by the Ministry regional director, the Ministry-approved major amendment is available for inspection at stage two of public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.3 and 7.3.2.

2.3 Amendment documentation

Applicable documentation requirements for a FMP (Part B) will apply to the preparation of an amendment to a FMP or contingency plan. Documentation requirements for an amendment include:

- (a) a title, certification and approval page submitted in accordance with the FIM;
- (b) the amendment request;
- (c) the district manager decision on classification and decision to proceed and Ministry district manager rationale;
- (d) amended text, information products and supplementary documentation submitted in accordance with the FIM;
- (e) comments from the LCC, if applicable; and
- (f) a summary of the results of formal consultation for minor and major amendments, including First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, public consultation, , and issue resolution.

Information products associated with planned operations will be submitted with the amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

If the Ministry district manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an amendment, those people will certify the parts of the amendment that they prepared, similar to a FMP.

If applicable, a List of Exceptions will be prepared, in the same format as for a FMP, to identify prescriptions or conditions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides.

For a major amendment an SEV consideration document will be prepared by MNRF and will accompany the amendment when it is submitted to the Ministry regional director for approval.

2.4 Amendment availability

All approved amendments will form part of, and will be available with, the approved FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved amendment.

All approved amendments will be submitted and be available on the Ontario Government website with the approved FMP in accordance with the FIM.

3.0 Contingency plans

3.1 Introduction

A contingency plan is an interim FMP required when circumstances affect the implementation of a FMP. These circumstances are described in Part C, Section 3.2.2. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current FMP and the approval for implementation of the new FMP. The period of a contingency plan will be consistent with the timeframe to prepare, review, and approve a 10-year FMP.

When a situation arises that requires a contingency plan, the Ministry district manager or Ministry regional resources manager will notify the Ministry regional director. Prior to preparing the contingency plan, a request for a contingency plan or a contingency plan proposal must be endorsed by the Ministry regional director.

3.2 Contingency plans

3.2.1 Contingency plan requests and contingency plan proposals

If a contingency plan is warranted, a request or a proposal will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with the Ministry.

The Ministry regional director will review the contingency plan request or proposal and decide if a contingency plan will be prepared.

Contingency plan requests

For a contingency plan that is required when there is a delay in the approval of an FMP (e.g., after stage three of consultation) (Part C, Section 3.2.2.1) a contingency plan request will be required. The request will provide:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the contingency plan;
- (c) the proposed period of the contingency plan;
- (d) a brief description of the proposed contents of the contingency plan, including supplementary documentation;
- (e) the schedule for the preparation, review and approval of the contingency plan; and

- (f) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports.

Where only non-contentious areas are being proposed for inclusion in the contingency plan, which were previously consulted on, no further First Nation and Métis community or public consultation will be required. Non-contentious areas will be determined by the planning team based on comments received from First Nation and Métis communities and the public during the preparation and review of the draft FMP.

First Nation and Métis communities will be notified of the contingency plan request following submission of the request to the Ministry regional director.

The Ministry regional director will review the contingency plan request and decide if a contingency plan will be prepared.

Contingency plan proposals

For longer-term contingency plans (i.e., normally one to three years) (Part C, Sections 3.2.2.2, 3.2.2.3 and 3.2.2.4) a contingency plan proposal will be required. The contingency plan proposal will provide:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the contingency plan;
- (c) the proposed period of the contingency plan;
- (d) a brief description of the proposed contents of the contingency plan, including supplementary documentation;
- (e) a description of the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and public consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of the new FMP;
- (f) a description of the proposed opportunities for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, public consultation and issue resolution in the preparation of the contingency plan;
- (g) the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values;
- (h) the schedule for the preparation, review and approval of the contingency plan;
- (i) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the LCC;
- (j) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by operations that may be proposed in the contingency plan;
- (k) major issues to be considered in the preparation of the contingency plan, if any;
- (l) a discussion of the effect on the timing of the preparation and approval (i.e., planning schedule), and period of the new FMP;

- (m) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
- (n) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the Ministry district manager, the Ministry regional resources manager, and the Ministry regional director.

Opportunities for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, public consultation, and issue resolution will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, subject to any modifications the Ministry and the plan author consider necessary in the circumstances, and will have regard for the extent of First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation and public consultation that has occurred to date in the preparation of the new FMP.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of a contingency plan is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

3.2.2 Preparation of a contingency plan

The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the contingency plan request or proposal endorsed by the Ministry regional director and the requirements in this section. The contingency plan will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2) and a LCC.

Contingency plan documentation will include:

- (a) a title, certification and approval page;
- (b) the contingency plan request or proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;
- (c) the summary of the management direction that applies to the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2.2.2);
- (d) a discussion on how the planned harvest areas for the period of the contingency plan were determined;
- (e) the content requirements, as per Part B, Sections 3.13 to 3.19 for all areas of operations;
- (f) other content requirements identified in the endorsed request or planning proposal;
- (g) comments from the LCC, where the contingency plan was prepared in accordance with a contingency plan proposal; and
- (h) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, public consultation and issue

resolution, where the contingency plan was prepared in accordance with a contingency plan proposal.

Where the contingency plan was prepared in accordance with a contingency plan proposal, the requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation for contingency plans are described in Part C, Sections 6.6 and 7.5.

A brief description of how the Ministry's SEV has been considered in the development of the contingency plan must be included, in the form of an SEV consideration document.

3.2.2.1 Delay in approval of a forest management plan

A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the approval of a FMP (e.g., after stage three of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a short-term plan (i.e., less than one year).

The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations in non-contentious areas from the draft FMP and may also include areas from the current FMP that have not yet been harvested, renewed or tended. Non-contentious areas will be determined by the planning team based on comments received from First Nation and Métis communities and the public during the preparation and review of the draft FMP.

3.2.2.2 Delay in preparation of a forest management plan

A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the preparation of a FMP (e.g., prior to stage three of consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a one or two-year plan. The appropriate planning, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and public consultation as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

Before completion of stage two of consultation - review of proposed management direction for the FMP

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Ministry regional director before completion of Stage Two for the FMP, the contingency plan will be consistent with the management direction in the current FMP. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and additional areas if required.

If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If

additional area is required, operations will be planned in a manner consistent with the management direction of the current FMP, the First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and the public consultation described in the endorsed planning proposal. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.7 and Part B, Section 3.13.

After completion of stage two of consultation - review of proposed management direction for the FMP

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Ministry regional director after Stage Two, the contingency plan will be consistent with that management direction. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and additional areas if required.

If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current FMP, and operations in those areas is consistent with the management direction, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If additional area is required, the contingency plan will normally incorporate non-contentious areas that have been identified during the development of the management direction of the new FMP and reviewed by First Nation and Métis community(s) and the public at stage two of consultation. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.7 and Part B, Section 3.13.

3.2.2.3 Adjustment to forest management planning schedules

A contingency plan may be required when there is a rescheduling of the preparation of a FMP to balance the number of FMPs prepared in any particular year, or to accommodate management unit amalgamations. This type of contingency plan is normally a one, two, or three year plan. The appropriate planning, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and public consultation as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted. The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with Part C, Section 3.2.2.2.

3.2.2.4 Unscheduled forest management plan renewal

A contingency plan may be required if the Ministry regional director requires the preparation of a new FMP. This type of contingency plan is normally a three-year plan. The appropriate planning, First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and public consultation as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not yet been implemented, and area selected from contingency area as appropriate. The planning of operations will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.27 and Part B, Section 3.13.

3.2.3 Submission, review and approval of the contingency plan

The contingency plan will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by the Ministry, in a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.3), as described in the endorsed contingency plan request or proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the Ministry review, the contingency plan will be certified and recommended for approval by the Ministry district manager and the Ministry regional resources manager. If the Ministry regional director agrees with the Ministry district manager's and the Ministry regional resources manager's recommendation, the Ministry regional director will approve the contingency plan in accordance with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.3). The FIM provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a contingency plan.

3.2.4 Contingency plan availability

The approved contingency plan will be available to First Nation and Métis communities, and the public at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved contingency plan.

4.0 Early plan renewals

4.1 Introduction

At any time during the implementation of a FMP, there may be circumstances that warrant preparation of a new FMP prior to the scheduled date.

4.2 Proposal for early forest management plan renewal

If preparation of a new FMP is warranted, a proposal will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with the Ministry and submitted to the Ministry regional director.

The proposal will contain the following information:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the period for the current FMP and the proposed implementation date for the new FMP;
- (c) a description of the circumstances and rationale for the preparation of a new FMP;
- (d) a discussion of additional planning that may be required (e.g., an amendment to the current FMP, a contingency plan); and
- (e) the comments or recommendations, if any, from the LCC.

4.3 Ministry regional director review and approval

The Ministry regional director will determine whether to proceed with the preparation of a new FMP, and notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the Ministry district manager and the manager of the Ministry's Forest Planning Policy Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch.

5.0 Forest management plan extensions

5.1 Introduction

A FMP extension, including an extension of a contingency plan, is an extension to the period of the current approved FMP. A FMP may be extended if any planned operations for the activities of access, harvest, renewal or maintenance in the approved FMP are available and are not expected to be completed by the end of the FMP period. The three types of extensions are a short-term extension (i.e., up to three months), a medium-term extension (up to one year), and a long-term extension (i.e., more than one year).

5.2 Forest management plan extension request or proposal

To initiate a FMP extension, a request or proposal will be prepared by the plan author, in conjunction with the Ministry.

FMP extension requests

For short-term and medium-term FMP extensions, a request will be prepared and will include:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the extension;
- (c) the proposed period of the extension;
- (d) a description of the planned operations from the current Ministry approved FMP or contingency plan to be implemented during the period of the extension, and any planned operations that are not being included in the FMP extension;
- (e) an outline of the documentation requirements for the FMP or contingency plan extension, including supplementary documentation if necessary;
- (f) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP or contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports

For medium term FMP extensions, the extension request will also identify and describe the proposed approach for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and consultation with known affected persons.

FMP extension proposals

For longer-term FMP extensions a proposal will be prepared and include:

- (a) the name of the management unit;
- (b) the reason for the extension;
- (c) the proposed period of the extension;
- (d) a discussion of planning implications for the new FMP, including:
 - (i) identification of the FMPM to be used for the preparation of the management direction;
 - (ii) identification of how the requirements of the applicable guides will be incorporated; and
 - (iii) the schedule of FMP preparation;
- (e) a brief discussion on the progress of implementation of the current approved FMP;
- (f) a discussion on the implications of the extension on the achievement of management objectives for the FMP;
- (g) a description of the planned operations from the current Ministry approved FMP to be implemented during the period of the extension, any planned operations that are not being included in the FMP extension;
- (h) an outline of the documentation requirements for the FMP extension, including supplementary documentation;
- (i) identification and description of the proposed approach for notification and consultation with known affected persons,
- (j) identification and description of the proposed approach for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation;
- (k) the coordination of the interrelationships between the FMP, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
- (l) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the Ministry district manager and the Ministry regional director.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement and consultation of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of FMP extensions is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

5.2.1 Submission, review and approval of the forest management plan extension request or proposal

The plan author will ensure that the FMP extension request, or proposal is complete and accurate. The plan author will submit the extension request or proposal to the Ministry regional resources manager.

5.2.1.1 Forest management plan extension request

The Ministry regional resources manager will review the request and determine whether preparation of the FMP extension should proceed. If the Ministry regional resources manager is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed extension should proceed, the Ministry regional resources manager will recommend approval of the extension request to the Ministry regional director.

The Ministry regional director will consider the Ministry regional resources manager's recommendation and determine if the preparation of the extension should proceed. If the Ministry regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed extension should proceed, the Ministry regional director will notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the Ministry district manager, the Ministry regional resources manager, and the Ministry manager, Forest Planning Policy Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch, once the request is approved.

Upon approval of the request by the Ministry regional director, the extension will be prepared.

5.2.1.2 Forest management plan extension proposal

The Ministry regional resources manager will review the proposal and determine whether preparation of the FMP extension should proceed and what revisions to the extension proposal, if any, are necessary. If the Ministry regional resources manager is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed extension should proceed, the Ministry regional resources manager will provide First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC an opportunity to review the extension proposal and provide comments. The Ministry regional resources manager will consider comments from First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC, if any, when deciding whether or not to recommend approval of the extension proposal to the Ministry regional director.

The Ministry regional director will consider the Ministry regional resources manager's recommendation and determine if the preparation of the extension should proceed. If the Ministry regional director is of the opinion that preparation of the proposed extension should proceed, the Ministry regional director will notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the Ministry district manager, the Ministry regional resources manager, and the Ministry manager, Forest Planning Policy Section, Crown Forests and Lands Policy Branch, once the proposal is approved.

Upon approval of the planning proposal by the Ministry regional director, the extension will be prepared.

5.3 Preparation of a forest management plan extension

The FMP extension will be prepared in accordance with the request or proposal approved by the Ministry regional director. The extension will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a registered professional forester.

The FMP extension will incorporate operations from the current FMP that have not been completed.

For short-term FMP extensions no further First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation or public consultation will be required. Notification requirements for short-term FMP extensions are described in Part C Sections 6.7 and 7.6.

The requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation for medium and long-term FMP extensions are described in Part C, Sections 6.7 and 7.6.

5.3.1 Documentation requirements for a forest management plan extension

In addition to the documentation requirements identified in the approved request or proposal, the FMP extension documentation will include:

- (a) a title, certification and approval page;
- (b) the approved request or proposal;
- (c) a map of the primary road corridors, branch road corridors, and the harvest area that will be carried forward in the plan extension;
- (d) comments from the LCC, where long-term extension was prepared in accordance with an extension proposal; and
- (e) a summary of the results of First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation, and public consultation where a medium-term or long-term extension was prepared in accordance with an extension request or proposal;

5.3.2 Submission, review and approval of the forest management plan extension

The FMP extension will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by the Ministry in a manner similar to the review of a FMP (Part A, Section 1.3), as described in the endorsed request or proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the Ministry review, the Ministry regional resources manager will certify the FMP extension and recommend the extension for approval by the Ministry regional director.

If the Ministry regional director agrees with the Ministry regional resources manager's recommendation, the Ministry regional director will approve the FMP extension in accordance with the same requirements as for a FMP (Part A, Section 1.4.3). The FIM provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a FMP extension.

5.3.3 Forest management plan extension availability

The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved FMP extension.

6.0 Public consultation

6.1 General

6.1.1 Public notices

The requirements for the contents of notices, the recipients of notices, and information availability will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP, with any modifications the Ministry district manager or the Ministry regional resources manager considers necessary in the circumstances. Public notices are required for major amendments, contingency plans, and medium-term and long-term FMP extensions. Public notices include direct written notices (e.g., email, letter), posted notices (e.g., Natural Resources Information Portal), and media notices (e.g., social media), and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

The Ministry will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations.

Each public notice will:

- (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
- (b) include a portrayal of the management unit in accordance with the FIM, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
- (c) describe the subject matter of the amendment, contingency plan, or FMP extension;
- (d) identify when and where information will be available; and
- (e) include the name of a contact person(s).

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation for minor and major amendments, long-term contingency plans, and medium-term and long-term FMP extensions are described in Part C, Sections 6.2, 6.3, 6.6 and 6.7.

6.1.2 Responses to comments

The Ministry, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing if requested, in a timely way, to written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of a minor amendment, a major amendment, a long-term contingency plan, or a medium-term and long-term FMP extension that relate to the

management direction for the FMP. The Ministry will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments that include a request for a written response. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered.

6.1.3 French Language Services Act

The *French Language Services Act, 1990* (FLSA) as amended from time to time, will govern the French language public consultation requirements for minor amendments, major amendments, contingency plans, and medium-term and long-term FMP extensions in designated areas under the act. The FLSA requirements for public consultation for FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply.

6.1.4 Issue resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of a minor or major amendment, or a contingency plan, the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue resolution may be compressed).

6.2 Minor amendments

One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a minor amendment. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise those persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the proposed operations that the minor amendment has been accepted by the Ministry district manager and to invite the opportunity to review the minor amendment.

6.2.1 Public notice requirements

Direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the minor amendment.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) a statement that those affected by the operations are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);

- (b) a statement that the minor amendment will receive Ministry approval (by a specific date) if no concerns are raised;
- (c) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
 - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
 - (ii) information may be used and shared between the Ministry and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
 - (iii) a Ministry contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information;
- (d) a description of the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.5).

6.2.2 Information and maps available

The minor amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved minor amendment.

6.3 Major amendments

6.3.1 General

Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations that are proposed in the major amendment.

6.3.2 Stage one – Review of proposed operations

Stage one of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information forum. This information forum will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the major amendment. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information forum.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the major amendment, including:
 - (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
 - (ii) the proposed corridor for each primary and branch road, if any, and proposed road locations/conditions; and
- (b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

6.3.2.1 Public notice requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will:

- (a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (15-day comment period);
- (b) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
 - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
 - (ii) information may be used and shared between the Ministry and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
 - (iii) a Ministry contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information;
- (c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.5); and
- (d) include the names of the Ministry, sustainable forest licensee, and LCC contacts.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the LCC will be available at the information forum and will be appropriately identified.

6.3.2.2 Information available

Information available for public review at the information forum will be comparable to the information available at stage two for a FMP (Part A, Section 2.3.3.2), with whatever modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances.

6.3.3 Stage two – Inspection of ministry-approved major amendment

Stage two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to inspect the Ministry-approved major amendment. The public notice will be issued upon approval of the major amendment by the Ministry regional director.

6.3.3.1 Information available

The Ministry-approved major amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved major amendment.

6.6 Contingency plans

6.6.1 General

The public consultation provisions for the preparation of a longer-term contingency plan will be described in the endorsed planning proposal. The public consultation provisions will be consistent with the requirements for a FMP and may vary having regard for the extent of public consultation to date on the proposed operations. A minimum of one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a longer-term contingency plan.

6.6.1.1 Public notice requirements

Public notice requirements will be consistent with similar stages for a FMP, with appropriate modifications (e.g., the timeframe for notices may be compressed (15 days)).

6.6.1.2 Information available

The contingency plan will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved contingency plan.

6.7 Forest management plan extensions

6.7.1 Public notice requirements

6.7.1.1 Short-term forest management plan extension

For short-term extensions the Ministry will provide direct written notice to persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the extension that the extension has been approved by the Ministry regional director. The direct written notice will include the following:

- (a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended;
and
- (b) the period of the FMP extension.

6.7.1.2 Medium-term and long-term forest management plan extensions

For medium term and long-term FMP extensions, one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation. The purpose of this consultation opportunity is to advise persons and organizations who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the extension that the extension request or proposal has been accepted by the Ministry and to provide an opportunity to comment on the planned operations to be implemented during the extension.

A direct written notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to approval of a medium-term or long-term FMP extension. The direct written notice will be issued to persons who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension.

The direct notice content requirements for a medium-term and long-term FMP extension will contain:

- (a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
- (b) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
 - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
 - (ii) information may be used and shared between the Ministry and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
 - (iii) a Ministry contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of the personal information; and
- (c) a statement that the medium term or long-term FMP extension will receive Ministry approval (by a specific date) if no concerns are raised.

Upon approval of the medium-term or long-term FMP extension, the Ministry regional director will issue a direct written notice to persons who are known to be directly affected by the planned operations to be implemented during the FMP extension to advise that the approved FMP extension is available for inspection. The notice will normally be issued before operations are scheduled to commence to provide time for the submission, and public inspection of the annual work schedule.

The direct written notice will contain the following:

- (a) a statement to advise that the period of the current FMP has been extended;
and
- (b) the period of the FMP extension.

6.7.2 Forest management plan extension availability

The approved FMP extension will be available with the applicable FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved FMP extension.

7.0 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation

7.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in plan amendments, contingency plans, or FMP extensions.

In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains provisions for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, or a FMP extension, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in plan amendments, contingency plans, or FMP extensions is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, the Ministry may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

For each notice required for a FMP amendment, a contingency plan, or a FMP extension a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation and Métis community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A notice will also be placed in the Indigenous media where available.

7.2 Minor amendments

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

The notice will contain an invitation to review and provide comments on the minor amendment. The notice will also include an invitation to review and provide comments on

the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations proposed in the amendment have the potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

The Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the Ministry-approved minor amendment.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the Ministry for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the minor amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

7.3 Major amendments

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 7.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

7.3.1 Stage one – Review of proposed operations

The Ministry district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis community information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis community information forum will be provided.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.2, the notice to the First Nation or Métis community will contain:

- (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis community information forum, if such an information forum was requested by a First Nation or Métis community;
- (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the major amendment; and
- (c) an invitation to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3) related to the proposed amendment, if forest operations in the proposed amendment have potential to affect First Nation and Métis values.

A supplemental notice will be issued by the Ministry approximately seven days in advance of the information forum(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

7.3.2 Stage two – Inspection of ministry-approved major amendment

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.3 will apply.

The Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to provide the final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values with updates related to the Ministry-approved major amendment.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the Ministry for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the major amendment (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

7.4 Contingency plans

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 6.6.1 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

The planning proposal for the longer-term contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for First Nation or Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). If the planning proposal for the longer-term contingency plan includes provisions for an information forum(s), the Ministry district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information forum will be provided.

7.5 Forest management plan extension

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part C, Section 6.7.1 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation and Métis community. The notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community.

For short-term extensions the Ministry will notify First Nation and Métis communities that the extension has been approved by the Ministry regional director.

The FMP extension request or proposal for a medium-term or long-term FMP extension will describe requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in the preparation of the FMP extension (Part C, Section 5.2). If the request or proposal for the medium or long term FMP extension includes provisions for an information forum(s), the Ministry district manager will contact the First Nation or Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information forum will be provided.

A Summary of First Nation and Métis Involvement will also be prepared by the Ministry for First Nation and Métis involvement in the preparation of the FMP extension (Part A, Section 3.6.4).

Table of contents

1.0	Introduction	3
	Phase-in provisions	4
2.0	Forest operations prescriptions	5
	Silvicultural ground rules	5
	Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern.....	6
	Conditions on regular operations	6
	Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits	6
	Annual work schedules	6
	Management unit annual reports.....	7
3.0	Annual work schedule	8
3.1	Introduction	8
3.2	Harvest	8
3.2.1	Wood storage yards.....	9
3.2.2	Renewal and maintenance (tending and protection).....	9
3.2.3	Roads.....	9
3.2.3.1	Water crossing construction	9
	Annual work schedule for the year of construction	10
3.2.3.2	Other crossings of areas of concern	10
3.2.3.3	Water crossing decommissioning	11
3.2.3.4	Forestry aggregate pits	11
3.2.4	Wildland fire opportunities, response, prevention, preparedness and mitigation	
	12	
3.2.4.1	Opportunities and response	12
3.2.4.2	Prevention and preparedness.....	12
3.2.5	Monitoring and assessment	13
3.2.6	Annual work schedule summary information	13
3.3	Information products.....	13
3.4	Submission of the annual work schedule	13
3.5	Changes during annual work schedule implementation	14
3.5.1	Revisions	14
3.5.2	Changes to silvicultural treatments.....	14
3.5.3	Changes to operational prescriptions for areas of concern	15
3.5.3.1	Values that no longer exist	15
3.5.3.2	Incorrectly located values.....	15
3.5.3.3	New values.....	15
3.5.3.4	Incorrectly identified values	16
3.5.4	Changes to conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits for areas of concern	16
3.5.4.1	Water crossings.....	16
	Unidentified and incorrectly identified streams.....	16

Changes to crossing conditions, crossing locations, or crossing structures	17
Streams that do not exist	17
3.5.4.2 Non-water crossings.....	18
Unidentified and incorrectly identified values	18
Changes to conditions.....	18
Values that no longer exist	19
Changes to conditions on existing roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits	19
3.5.5 Documentation for changes during annual work schedule implementation.....	19
4.0 Prescribed burns.....	21
5.0 Aerial herbicide and insecticide projects	22
6.0 Insect pest management programs	24
6.1 Introduction	24
6.2 Development of insect pest management program.....	24
6.2.1 No aerial application of insecticides	25
6.2.2 Aerial application of insecticides	25
7.0 Public consultation	26
7.1 General.....	26
7.1.1 Public notices	26
7.1.2 French Language Services Act.....	26
7.2 Annual work schedules	27
7.3 Prescribed burns	27
7.4 Aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and road maintenance herbicide application.....	28
7.5 Insect pest management programs	29
7.5.1 General.....	29
7.5.2 Review of proposed insect pest management program.....	29
7.5.3 Notification of insect pest management program approval	31
7.5.4 Issue resolution	31
8.0 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation	32
8.1 Introduction	32
8.2 Annual work schedules	33
8.2.1 Submission of the annual work schedule	33
8.2.2 Revisions	34
8.2.3 First Nation and Métis community notice requirements	34
8.3 Prescribed burns	35
8.4 Aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and road maintenance herbicide application	35
8.5 Insect pest management programs	35
8.5.1 Review of proposed insect pest management program.....	36
8.5.2 Notification of insect pest management program approval	36

1.0 Introduction

This part of the manual describes the requirements for annual operations, including the preparation of forest operations prescriptions and annual work schedules (AWS), and the detailed project planning required before the implementation of forest operations.

The link between the prescriptions for operations in the forest management plan (FMP) and the scheduled operations in the AWS is the forest operations prescription. The requirements for the development of forest operations prescriptions are described in section 2.0.

An AWS identifies operations that are scheduled for implementation during the year. The requirements for the preparation, and viewing of an AWS are described in section 3.0.

When prescribed burns, aerial herbicide or aerial insecticide projects are scheduled in an AWS, detailed project planning is required. Section 4.0 describes the planning requirements for prescribed burns. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial herbicide and aerial insecticide projects.

If insect pest management programs are required, the types and locations of insect pest management activities will be determined in accordance with the requirements of section 6.0.

Section 7.0 describes the requirements for public consultation. Section 8.0 describes the requirements for First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in relation to annual operations.

The Forest Information Manual (FIM) and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products to be included in the AWS.

For community-based FMPs in Ontario's Far North requirements of Part D of the FMPM will apply to annual operations, including the preparation of forest operations prescriptions and detailed project planning requirements, subject to any modifications the Ministry and the plan author consider necessary in the circumstance and agree upon.

For community-based FMPs in Ontario's Far North requirements for information products to be included in the AWS will be completed in accordance with the FIM and applicable technical specification(s) subject to any modifications the Ministry and the sustainable forest licensee consider necessary in the circumstance.

Phase-in provisions

Part D will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) except as follows:

- For Part D, Section 3.0 of this FMPM, the following phase-in provisions apply:
 - For Annual work schedule revisions submitted prior to the effective date of this FMPM, those revisions will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2017);
 - For Annual work schedule revisions submitted following the effective date of this FMPM, those revisions will be prepared in accordance with this manual to the extent reasonably possible.

2.0 Forest operations prescriptions

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and tending activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition (e.g., silvicultural ground rule (SGR)). A forest operations prescription will be developed before operations can commence. Forest operations prescriptions are integral to the silvicultural effectiveness monitoring. Forest operations prescriptions may also be operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern prepared to protect a value. Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern may not be consistent with a SGR. Conditions on regular operations and conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits may also be prepared to protect important ecological features.

A forest operations prescription will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester.

The complete forest operations prescription for a particular area of operations, or portion of an area of operations, is comprised of a combination of:

- (a) the assigned SGR or operational prescription and conditions for areas of concern in the FMP(s);
- (b) the appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) from the applicable SGR or operational prescription and conditions for areas of concern; and
- (c) the actual SGR and silvicultural treatments implemented on the area of operations, as identified in the applicable management unit annual report(s).

Silvicultural ground rules

For most of the areas of operations, the SGRs in the FMP are the forest operations prescriptions. SGRs will apply to the applicable forest unit-ecosite combinations on the management unit. The most common silvicultural treatment package in the SGR identifies the suite of silvicultural treatments that will be used most frequently. However, any of the acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments identified in the SGR may also be used.

During the preparation of the AWS, the SGR for an area of operations will be confirmed or changed based on the information available at that time. If a change to the SGR is required, an appropriate SGR from the FMP will be selected or a new SGR will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. If there was a change to the SGR based on the information available during the preparation and implementation of the AWS, the SGR implemented will be reported in the management unit annual report (Part E, Section 2.0).

Operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern

The operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern in a FMP may include modified operations developed to protect or manage specific values. These modified operations, developed to provide protection that are not consistent with a SGR, are deemed to be the forest operations prescription.

In the preparation of the AWS, the operational prescription and conditions for areas of concern will be confirmed or changed to reflect updated values information. If a change to the operational prescription and/or conditions for areas of concern is required, an appropriate operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern from the FMP will be identified or a new operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate operational prescriptions and conditions for areas of concern will be identified in the AWS.

Conditions on regular operations

Where a condition on regular operations has been developed (e.g., for an important ecological feature) through application of a forest management guide (e.g., forest management guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) the condition applies to all forest operations prescriptions in the AWS

Conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits

Where a condition on roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits have been developed (e.g., for an important ecological feature) through application of a forest management guide (e.g., forest management guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales) the condition applies to all forest operations prescriptions in the AWS.

Annual work schedules

The AWS will include information products for areas scheduled for access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations, and assessment in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

Management unit annual reports

The management unit annual report will contain the information products for areas of access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations, and assessment in accordance with the requirements of Part E and the FIM.

3.0 Annual work schedule

3.1 Introduction

An AWS for a year will be submitted to the Ministry for the management unit before any access, harvest, renewal, and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection) operations may proceed in the year, and will be consistent with the FMP. An AWS is normally required for a one-year period that normally commences on April 1, and ends on March 31. In circumstances where there is a delay in the approval of a FMP, where a short-term contingency plan, a short or medium term FMP extension is being implemented an AWS may be less than one year. The AWS information products will be submitted to the Ministry in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

The AWS will include text in accordance with the FIM to address commitments identified in the FMP and/or document any necessary information (e.g., compliance plan, fire prevention and preparedness plan) or any unforeseen circumstances with the implementation of the FMP.

The AWS identifies operations that were previously planned and approved in the FMP, and are scheduled for implementation during that year. In addition to operations that were previously planned and approved in the FMP, water crossings will also be identified in the AWS.

3.2 Harvest

The average annual planned harvest area for the 10-year period of the FMP will guide the amount of area scheduled for harvest in an AWS. If sufficient available harvest area remains in the FMP, up to three years of the average annual planned harvest area may be submitted in an AWS in accordance with the FIM to provide flexibility for unforeseen circumstances.

If bridging operations are to be identified in the AWS, these areas will contribute to the three years of the average annual planned harvest area that may be submitted in an AWS (i.e., three years of the average annual planned harvest area in AWS submission equals the sum of the average annual planned harvest area in the FMP plus identified bridging areas).

Areas identified for salvage operations may be identified in the AWS in addition to the three years of the average annual planned harvest area and bridging areas to facilitate the implementation of salvage harvest operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood.

If stand level residual requirements were identified in the FMP to be addressed during the implementation of operations, the area will be submitted in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide.

3.2.1 Wood storage yards

Wood storage yards to be used during the year will be identified and portrayed in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

3.2.2 Renewal and maintenance (tending and protection)

Areas for renewal and maintenance will be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

If protection is scheduled during the year as a result of insect pest management planning (Part D, Section 6.0), the scheduled activities will be identified and portrayed in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

Prescribed burn plans (Part D, Section 4.0), and project descriptions and project plans for aerial applications of herbicides or insecticides (Part D, Section 5.0), are normally prepared during the year of the AWS. Following approval, these documents will form part of and be available with the AWS.

3.2.3 Roads

The location of scheduled primary and branch road construction will be submitted in the AWS. Also, the roads scheduled to be decommissioned, transferred or which will have access controls established will also be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

If there are road construction or maintenance activities scheduled for the purpose of creating or maintaining an airstrip along a road these activities will be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

3.2.3.1 Water crossing construction

Water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including existing water crossings scheduled for replacement, will be submitted in the AWS. Information products associated with water crossings scheduled for construction and replacement will be submitted in accordance with the FIM.

Higher risk water crossings planned for the following year may be submitted with the AWS to provide the Ministry an ice-free season to conduct a review with respect to the *Fisheries Act*.

Where an applicable approved water crossing standard identified in the FMP will be implemented (Part A, Section 1.2.10), Ministry review of the crossing is not required and the water crossing will be eligible for construction with the submission of the AWS.

In instances where a water crossing standard does not exist, an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where a spatial management zone related to fisheries has identified a need for Ministry review and approval, a Ministry review and approval is required. The decision framework in the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings will be used to assist in determining crossings that require Ministry review and approval.

All water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year require the appropriate notification forms to be completed and approvals where required as per the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings, and submitted for inclusion in the AWS.

Annual work schedule for the year of construction

For each new primary, branch or operational road water crossing, a 200 metre crossing location will be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM. Conditions on construction and if applicable water crossing standards will be consistent with the FMP.

For water crossings that require Ministry review and approval, the 200 metre location and conditions on construction for each water crossing will be confirmed or changed as a result of the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, or operational considerations. Water crossings scheduled to be constructed in the current year, including existing water crossings scheduled for replacement, will be submitted in accordance with the FIM.

Information products for water crossings submitted in an AWS will be identified in the FIM.

3.2.3.2 Other crossings of areas of concern

For each crossing of an area of concern that does not involve a water crossing, the conditions on the construction of the crossing will be confirmed or changed, consistent with

the FMP (Part B, Section 3.16). If a change to the operational prescription and/or conditions for areas of concern is required, an appropriate operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern from the FMP will be identified or a new operational prescription and/or conditions for an area of concern will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0.

3.2.3.3 Water crossing decommissioning

Water crossing decommissioning activities for primary, branch and operational roads and/or road networks will be submitted with the AWS in accordance with the FIM. Water crossing decommissioning activities will be consistent with the road decommissioning approach in the FMP. The conditions on removal and any water crossing standards for each water crossing scheduled to be decommissioned will be consistent with the FMP.

For primary and branch roads where the Ministry's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, each water crossing will be examined using criteria for the removal of water crossings described in Ministry guide(s) (e.g., guide relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), to determine the appropriate decommissioning activities (e.g., removal of the crossing, establishment of a ford). Where an applicable approved water crossing standard identified in the FMP will be implemented (Part A, Section 1.2.10), Ministry review of the crossing is not required and the water crossing decommissioning will be eligible for removal with the submission of the AWS.

Where a water crossing standard does not exist, where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, or where a spatial management zone related to fisheries has identified a need for Ministry review and approval, Ministry review and approval is required.

All water crossings scheduled to be decommissioned in the current year require the appropriate notification forms to be completed or approvals where required, as per the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

3.2.3.4 Forestry aggregate pits

Pits scheduled for final rehabilitation before pit closure will be submitted with the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

New forestry aggregate pits are not required to be identified in the AWS in which they will be opened provided they are within primary or branch road corridors, operational road boundaries, or aggregate extraction areas approved in the FMP and scheduled in the AWS. The information products associated with new forestry aggregate pits will be updated and

reported annually (i.e., forestry aggregate pits opened during the current AWS will be included in the AWS for the following year).

Conditions for forestry aggregate pits, including rehabilitation, are set out in Appendix IV.

3.2.4 Wildland fire opportunities, response, prevention, preparedness and mitigation

3.2.4.1 Opportunities and response

The majority of Ontario's forests are fire-dependent ecosystems that rely on periodic wildland fire as a renewal agent. To allow wildland fire, or prescribed fire (Section 4.0) where safe and appropriate the identification of wildland fire opportunities will support land and resource management objectives (e.g., hazard reduction, forest renewal, habitat management) as well as support an appropriate Ministry response to wildland fires, especially during periods of escalated wildland fire circumstances.

Through dialogue with their local Ministry district and fire management representative, the sustainable forest licensee will identify wildland fire opportunities annually for the management unit in accordance with the FIM to support wildland fire management planning.

3.2.4.2 Prevention and preparedness

The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures described in the FMP will apply to the entire management unit and all licensees.

The AWS will identify the resources available to carry out annual fire prevention and suppression operations. The Ministry guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in preparing:

- (a) an itemized list, in tabular format, that describes the fire suppression equipment that will be available and maintained on areas where operations are occurring; and
- (b) a description of the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of workers involved in forest operations.

The information that describes the fire suppression equipment that will be available and maintained in areas where operations are occurring, and the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of workers involved in forest operations will be submitted in the AWS in accordance with the FIM.

3.2.5 Monitoring and assessment

The annual component of the 10-year compliance strategy described in the FMP (Part B, Section 3.18.1) will be submitted in accordance with the FIM. The annual component of the compliance strategy will contain a description of the forest operations inspection program that will be implemented, as described in the Forest Compliance Handbook, and be included as part of the AWS.

3.2.6 Annual work schedule summary information

A portrayal of the areas that are scheduled for operations will be prepared in accordance with the FIM, and will be available for public inspection.

3.3 Information products

The forest operations that are scheduled in the AWS will be provided in information products in accordance with the FIM.

3.4 Submission of the annual work schedule

The AWS will be submitted to the Ministry and First Nation and Métis communities (Part D, Section 8.2.1) in accordance with the requirements of Part D of this manual and the FIM. The AWS will normally be submitted by January 1 of each year.

The Ministry will have the opportunity to review the AWS for completeness and accuracy. If a review is completed, a list of modifications, and rationale for those modifications will be prepared, and certified by a Ministry registered professional forester. Under the authority of the district manager, the Ministry will provide the results of the review to the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the AWS. The plan author will consider the identified modifications and ensure the AWS is consistent with the FMP.

Subject to any direction(s) by the Ministry district manager requiring revisions or resubmission of the AWS under Part D, Section 8.2.1 operations may commence once the period of inspection is complete (Part D, Section 7.2)..

The AWS and any subsequent revisions to the AWS will remain available for the one-year duration of the AWS at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons,

and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the AWS.

3.5 Changes during annual work schedule implementation

3.5.1 Revisions

Revisions to an AWS may be required during the year. Revisions will be consistent with the FMP, including any amendments to the FMP. If new areas of operations from the FMP are added during the year, a revision to the AWS will be required. Revisions will be submitted to the Ministry in accordance with the FIM and be available with the AWS. The Ministry will have the opportunity to review the AWS for completeness and accuracy. If a review is completed, a list of modifications, and rationale for those modifications will be prepared, and certified by a Ministry registered professional forester. Under the authority of the district manager, the Ministry will provide the results of the review to the plan author within seven days. The plan author will consider the identified modifications to ensure the AWS is consistent with the FMP.

Where a species that could be affected by forestry operations under a FMP receives protection under the ESA after the approval of the AWS, a revision to the AWS may be required to remove or change operations until the FMP is amended.

First Nation and Métis communities may be provided an opportunity to review revisions related to the scheduled operations in the AWS in accordance with the Part D, Section 8.2.2.

3.5.2 Changes to silvicultural treatments

During AWS implementation, if a change to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled for harvest, renewal or tending operations occurs, and:

- (a) the change is consistent with the SGR in the FMP, the change will be prepared by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee;
- (b) the change is not consistent with the SGR in the FMP, an appropriate SGR from the FMP will be selected and the change will be prepared by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee; or
- (c) the change is not consistent with any of the SGRs in the FMP, a new SGR will be developed in an amendment to the FMP, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate SGR and silvicultural

treatment(s) will be prepared by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee.

Changes to forest operations prescriptions during the implementation of a FMP will not require a review by the Ministry. The necessary documentation for changes to SGRs will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3 Changes to operational prescriptions for areas of concern

3.5.3.1 Values that no longer exist

During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that an identified value no longer exists. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of concern in the FMP will no longer apply. The area within the planned harvest area associated with the operational prescription for the area of concern may be harvested as per the applicable SGR subject to conditions in the operational prescription for the area of concern (e.g., bald eagle restrictions). An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3.2 Incorrectly located values

During the implementation of operations, the actual location of a value in or adjacent to an area of operations may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP. The operational prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented in the actual location of the value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3.3 New values

During the implementation of operations, previously unidentified values may be encountered. If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the new value is available in the FMP, that operational prescription will be implemented. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section

2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

The necessary documentation for the change in values information that does not require an amendment will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.3.4 Incorrectly identified values

During the implementation of operations, the actual value in an area of operations may be different than the portrayed value identified in the FMP (e.g., eagle nest instead of an osprey nest). If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the actual value is available in the FMP, the operational prescription for the area of concern in the FMP will be implemented for the actual value. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required.

The necessary documentation for the change in values information that does not require an amendment will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.4 Changes to conditions on roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits for areas of concern

3.5.4.1 Water crossings

Unidentified and incorrectly identified streams

During the construction of a road, an unidentified stream may be encountered or the actual location of a stream may be different than the portrayed location in the FMP and AWS. In cases where an applicable water crossing standard from the FMP will be implemented in its entirety, the applicable forms will be completed and submitted to the Ministry in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings. Upon receipt of the applicable forms, the AWS will be deemed revised to include the water crossing and the requirements of Part D, Section 3.5.1 will not apply.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Where an approved water crossing standard does not exist in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.10) or where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, a new 200 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions on construction will be

identified in a revision to the AWS. The review and approval of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur before the revision to the AWS. An amendment to the FMP will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to crossing conditions, crossing locations, or crossing structures

During the construction of a road, a change to the condition(s) on construction of a water crossing may be desired. If the change is consistent with the FMP a revision to the AWS will not be required. If the change in conditions is not consistent with the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS will be required. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur if required in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.3.1.

During the construction of a road, a change to a water crossing location may be desired. A new 200 metre wide location for the water crossing will be identified in a revision to the AWS. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur in accordance with Part D, Section 3.2.3.1.

During the construction of a road, a change to the water crossing structure to be installed may be desired. In cases where an applicable water crossing standard from the FMP will be implemented in its entirety a revision to the AWS will not be required. In cases where an applicable water crossing standard from the FMP will be implemented in its entirety, the applicable forms will be completed and submitted to the Ministry in accordance with the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry/Fisheries and Oceans Canada Protocol for the Review and Approval of Forestry Water Crossings.

Where an approved water crossing standard does not exist in the FMP (Part A, Section 1.2.10) or where an approved water crossing standard cannot be met in its entirety, the new water crossing structure will be identified in a revision to the AWS. The review and approval of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will occur before the revision to the AWS. An amendment to the FMP will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Streams that do not exist

During the construction of a road, it may be determined that a previously mapped stream

does not exist. In such a situation, the 200 metre wide location and conditions on construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.4.2 Non-water crossings

Unidentified and incorrectly identified values

During the construction of a road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a previously unidentified value may be encountered or the actual location of a value may be different than the location portrayed in the FMP.

If it is necessary to construct a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit within an area of concern for such a value, and applicable conditions on location(s) and/or construction are available in the FMP, those conditions will apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required. If no applicable conditions are available in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to conditions

During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition on construction may be desired. If the change is consistent with the conditions on construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

If a change to a condition(s) on construction is desired, and the change is not consistent with the conditions on construction identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the AWS, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Values that no longer exist

During the construction of a road, landing, or forestry aggregate pit it may be determined that an identified value no longer exists. In such a situation, the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to conditions on existing roads, landings and forestry aggregate pits

During the use of an existing road, landing or forestry aggregate pit, a change to a condition may be required for a new value or if a value no longer exists. If the required change is consistent with an available condition for an area of concern identified in the FMP, an amendment to the FMP or a revision to the AWS will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to the Ministry, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

3.5.5 Documentation for changes during annual work schedule implementation

For all revisions to an AWS, the necessary documentation will be submitted in accordance with the FIM.

For all changes to operations that do not require an AWS revision, or changes that were deemed to revise the AWS (Part D, Section 3.5.4.1), updated information will be provided to the Ministry, in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

For changes to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled for harvest, renewal or tending operations the sustainable forest licensee will be responsible for the maintenance of records for forest operation prescriptions, including changes to silvicultural treatments during AWS implementation. Any necessary information will be provided in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The selection of a different forest operations prescription during the implementation of a FMP will not require a review by the Ministry. Where the selected SGR changes during implementation of annual operations the SGR change will be reported on in the management unit annual report in accordance with the FIM.

The updated operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits will be provided in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

AWS revisions will remain available for the one-year duration of the AWS at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Changes to values information, operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction of roads, landings, and forestry aggregate pits, during AWS implementation will remain available for the duration of the FMP at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the AWS revision.

4.0 Prescribed burns

For each prescribed burn scheduled during the year of the AWS, a prescribed burn plan will be prepared. The Ministry's Prescribed Burn Manual describes the requirements for the preparation, review and approval of prescribed burn plans. Prescribed burn plans will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the FIM. The FIM provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted prescribed burns.

The approved prescribed burn plan will form part of and be available with the AWS.

The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved prescribed burn plan are described in Part D, Sections 7.3 and 8.3.

The prescribed burn proponent is responsible to ensure each prescribed burn area will be posted at least 14 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at main roads into the prescribed burn area. Signs will be provided in English and, where applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous languages upon request from Indigenous communities. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of the burn, and contact information of a contact person who can provide more information.

5.0 Aerial herbicide and insecticide projects

Projects that involve the aerial application of a herbicide are scheduled in the AWS. Projects that involve the aerial application of an insecticide are determined during the planning of insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0).

A project description and a project plan will be prepared for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide.

The project description will include:

- (a) a statement of the objectives to be achieved;
- (b) a description of the forest in the proposed treatment area;
- (c) the rationale for the proposed treatment including a discussion of the alternatives to herbicides or insecticides considered;
- (d) the technical name, formulation and *Pest Control Products Act* registration number (i.e., PCP number) of the herbicide or insecticide;
- (e) the proposed application rate;
- (f) the type of aircraft to be used (i.e., rotary, fixed wing);
- (g) the name of the project supervisor;
- (h) the portrayed locations of the treatment areas in accordance with the FIM;
- (i) the proposed timing of the activity; and
- (j) a description of the results of the application of the Ministry/ Ministry of the Environment Conservation and Parks (MECP) Buffer Zones and their portrayal in accordance with the FIM.

The project plan will include:

- (a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify First Nation and Métis communities, and the public (i.e., a communications plan);
- (b) an operations plan;
- (c) a safety plan; and
- (d) a security plan.

The project description and project plan for a aerial herbicide project will be approved by the Ministry district manager in a format prescribed by the FIM, and will form part of and be available with the AWS.

The project description and project plan for an aerial insecticide project will be approved by the Ministry regional director as part of the development of an insect pest management program (Part D, Section 6.0) in a format prescribed by FIM, and will form part of and be available with the AWS.

The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved project description and project plan for an aerial pesticide project are described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.4. The Pesticide Permit approval from the MECP will be available for inspection through the appropriate Ministry office(s), and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, at the time of operations.

Each herbicide and insecticide spray block will be posted not more than seven days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at all reasonable points of access and at known locations within or adjacent to the spray block where water is obtained for human consumption. Signs will remain in place for at least 30 days after the completion of the project, normally removed by November 1 of the spray year, and will clearly advise the public of the specific pesticide used in that operation. Signs will be provided in English and, where applicable, in French, in Oji-Cree, and in other Indigenous languages upon request by Indigenous communities. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of spraying, the pesticide to be used, the date when berries can again be consumed, and the contact information of a contact person who can provide more information.

6.0 Insect pest management programs

6.1 Introduction

The occurrence and extent of insect infestations are determined annually. When a major insect pest infestation exists the Ministry regional director will determine if an insect pest management program will be developed. The insect pest management program will determine the types and locations of insect pest management activities that are required.

6.2 Development of insect pest management program

When a major insect pest infestation exists, an insect pest management program will be developed by an interdisciplinary team. The team will be comprised of Ministry, and staff of the sustainable forest licensee(s). Representatives from First Nation and Métis communities and the LCC will also be invited to participate on the interdisciplinary team.

Areas eligible for insect pest management will be identified and portrayed in accordance with the FIM, and a range of management options will be considered and documented. The following management options will be considered:

- (a) no treatment;
- (b) accelerated harvest;
- (c) redirected harvest;
- (d) salvage harvest;
- (e) prescribed burns;
- (f) the use of insecticides;
- (g) other controls (e.g., bait traps); and
- (h) appropriate combinations of options (a) to (g).

When considering the use of insecticides, where alternatives to chemical insecticides are commercially available, reasonably cost-effective, and approved federally and provincially for use, the Ministry will give preference to such alternatives. Each management option will be evaluated and the results will be documented. The evaluation will consist of:

- (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option for forest management purposes;
- (b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option as they relate to potential effects on non-timber values identified in the areas eligible for insect pest management;
- (c) a discussion of the anticipated effectiveness of the management option; and
- (d) an estimate of the operational costs related to the management option.

A specific course of action will be chosen, based on a comparison of the evaluations of the management options. The reasons for the selection of the specific course of action will be documented.

6.2.1 No aerial application of insecticides

If the selected course of action does not involve the aerial application of insecticides the Ministry will review the selected course of action and rationale. If the Ministry regional director agrees with the specific course of action, the Ministry regional director will approve the insect pest management program. If the approved insect pest management program involves accelerated, redirected or salvage harvest operations, the Ministry district manager will determine if an amendment to a FMP(s) is required. If an amendment is required, the amendment will be deemed to be administrative to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of harvest operations to avoid the spread of the insect (Part C, Section 2.0).

6.2.2 Aerial application of insecticides

If the selected course of action involves the aerial application of insecticides, specific project proposals for the insect pest management program will be prepared for review, in accordance with the requirements for public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.4. After the 15 day review period, a project description and a project plan will be prepared for each aerial insecticide project and submitted to the Ministry for regional director approval, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0. The FIM provides direction for approval pages associated with insecticide pest management programs.

As part of the documentation for the insect pest management program, a brief description of how the Ministry's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights, 1993* (EBR), as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the insect pest management program will be produced, in the form of an SEV consideration document.

7.0 Public consultation

7.1 General

7.1.1 Public notices

Public notices are required for AWSs, prescribed burns, roadside maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects and insect pest management programs. Public notices include direct written notices (e.g., letter, email), posted notices (e.g., Natural Resources Information Portal) and media notices (e.g., social media), and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

The Ministry will issue direct written notices to interested and affected persons and organizations.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

The AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the Ontario Government website. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the AWS, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects.

Insect pest management programs will be available through the appropriate Ministry office(s) and on the Ontario Government website.

7.1.2 French Language Services Act

The *French Language Services Act*, as amended from time to time, will govern the French language public consultation requirements for annual operations in designated areas under the act. The translation requirements in Part A, Section 2.3.2 will apply to public notices for AWSs, and public notices and signage for prescribed burns and aerial herbicide and insecticide projects. The *French Language Services Act* requirements for French language public consultation for FMPs (Part A, Section 2.3.2.4) will apply to insect pest management programs, with whatever modifications the Ministry considers necessary in the circumstances.

7.2 Annual work schedules

At least 15 days before operations are scheduled to commence, a public notice (i.e., media, posted, and direct written) will be issued by the Ministry to advise First Nation and Métis communities, and the public that the AWS is available for viewing. A single notice may be issued for multiple AWSs.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to persons who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the year of the AWS, and in particular those persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in specific areas. Reasonable efforts will be made to identify those persons who may be directly affected, including examination of registered traplines and mining activity within the areas scheduled for operations.

The public notice will:

- (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
- (b) identify where the AWS will be available for viewing;
- (c) include a portrayal of the management unit in accordance with the FIM, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit;
- (d) identify that AWS information is available; and
- (e) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

Operations scheduled for the year consistent with the approved FMP will be available when the public notice is issued.

The AWS (and any subsequent revisions to the AWS) will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the AWS.

7.3 Prescribed burns

For prescribed burns, a public notice will be issued by the MNRF at least 30 days before the anticipated date of the burn to advise First Nation and Métis communities, and the public that the prescribed burn plan is available for inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple prescribed burns on the management unit.

The public notice will:

- (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
- (b) identify where the prescribed burn plan will be available for inspection;
- (c) include a portrayal of the management unit in accordance with the FIM, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit; and
- (d) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided by the Ministry to known affected persons and interested persons who have requested notice of prescribed burns.

Additional consultation responsibilities for the proponent are identified in the Ministry's Prescribed Burn Manual.

The approved prescribed burn plan will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved prescribed burn plan.

7.4 Aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and road maintenance herbicide application

For aerial herbicide or insecticide projects the Ministry will issue a public notice at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to advise First Nation and Métis communities, and the public that the approved project description and project plan for the aerial herbicide or insecticide project is available for inspection.

For road maintenance herbicide application, the Ministry will issue a public notice at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to advise First Nation and Métis communities, and the public of the road maintenance operation.

A single notice may be issued for multiple aerial herbicide or insecticide projects, or road maintenance herbicide application on the management unit.

The public notice will:

- (a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
- (b) identify where information will be available for inspection;
- (c) identify the anticipated date(s) of herbicide or insecticide application;
- (d) include a portrayal of the management unit in accordance with the FIM, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit; and
- (e) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

For aerial herbicide or insecticide projects, a direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to landowners or occupants within 500 metres of the proposed treatment area. The direct written notice will also be provided to First Nation and Métis communities and stakeholders who may be directly affected (e.g., tourism businesses with bear management areas).

An additional public notice for each aerial herbicide or insecticide project, or road maintenance herbicide application will be issued by the Ministry at least seven days before the scheduled date of application.

The approved aerial herbicide or insecticide project description and project plan, and road maintenance herbicide application information will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website for the one-year duration of the AWS. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with staff with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved aerial herbicide or insecticide projects and road maintenance herbicide projects.

7.5 Insect pest management programs

7.5.1 General

When an insect pest management program results in a selected course of action that involves the aerial application of insecticides, one formal opportunity will be provided for First Nation and Métis community and public consultation during the preparation of specific project proposals.

7.5.2 Review of proposed insect pest management program

The consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites First Nation and Métis communities, and the public to an information forum. Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations. The purpose of the information forum is for First Nation and Métis communities, and the public to review, and comment on, the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects. The notice will normally be issued at least 15 days before the information forum.

The notice will include:

- (a) the name of the Ministry district(s) and the purpose of the notice;
- (b) when and where information will be available;
- (c) a portrayal of the Ministry district(s) in accordance with the FIM where the insect pest management program is being prepared;
- (d) the name of a contact person and contact information.
- (e) a statement that First Nation and Métis communities, and the public are asked to provide comments within a 15 day review period (to advise when comments are due a specific date will be provided);
- (f) a three part notice of collection that is compliant with the the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act* which identifies:
 - (i) personal information is being collected under the authority of Section 68 of the CFSA;
 - (ii) information may be used and shared between the Ministry and/or the sustainable forest licensee to contact individuals regarding comments submitted; and
 - (iii) Ministry contact who can respond to any questions about the collection and use of personal information;; and
- (g) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part D, Section 7.5.4).

The following information will be available at the information forum:

- (a) insect infestation information and population forecasts;
- (b) a portrayal of areas eligible for insect pest management in accordance with the FIM;
- (c) the current version of values information for the affected management unit(s) in the Ministry district(s);
- (d) the evaluation of management options;
- (e) the selected course of action, with reasons;
- (f) draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects, and associated information products (e.g., maps);
- (g) the results of the district insect pest management program for the same insect species in the previous year (if any); and
- (h) a comment form.

Representatives of the interdisciplinary team that developed the insect pest management program, will be available at the information forum, and will be appropriately identified.

There will be a period of 15 days from the date of the information forum for First Nation and Métis communities, and the public to provide comments to the Ministry.

The Ministry will respond in writing, if requested in a timely way, to written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of an insect pest management program. The Ministry will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that initiated the letter. The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments that include a request for a written response. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered.

7.5.3 Notification of insect pest management program approval

Upon approval of an insect pest management program by the Ministry regional director, MNRF will issue a public notice. The public notice will include:

- (a) a statement that the insect pest management program has been approved;
- (b) the name of the Ministry district(s) and the purpose of the notice;
- (c) when and where information will be available;
- (d) a portrayal of the Ministry district(s) in accordance with the FIM for which the insect pest management program is being prepared; and
- (e) the name of a contact person and contact information.

This notice may serve as the public notice for aerial insecticide projects that will be issued at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 5.0), if the anticipated date of application is within 60 days.

7.5.4 Issue resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of an insect pest management program, the Ministry regional director stage of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 2.4.1.2 will apply.

8.0 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation

8.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements to involve and consult First Nation and Métis communities, identified as per Part A, Section 3.1.1, in the preparation of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs. The purpose of the requirements in section 8.2.1 is to provide an opportunity for First Nation and Métis communities to identify any new values that may be impacted by forest operations in the annual work schedule.

In those cases where a customized consultation approach with a First Nation or Métis community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 3.4, and contains provisions for annual work schedules, prescribed burns, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a customized consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the First Nation or Métis community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach, the requirements described in this section will apply.

The consideration of established or credibly asserted Aboriginal or treaty rights through the involvement of First Nation and Métis communities in the preparation of annual work schedules, prescribed burns, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and insect pest management programs is intended, in part, to assist the Crown to address any obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, including the duty to consult and, where appropriate, accommodate.

For a community that is not determined to be a First Nation or Métis community in or adjacent to the management unit, the Ministry may consult with the community through a process that is not governed by the FMPM.

For each notice required for an AWS, prescribed burn, road maintenance herbicide application, aerial herbicide and insecticide project, and insect pest management program, a direct written notice will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community in English, and if requested at the time of the last FMP or afterwards, in the Indigenous language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in the Indigenous media, where available.

8.2 Annual work schedules

8.2.1 Submission of the annual work schedule

By January 1 of each year the sustainable forest licensee will provide each First Nation and Métis community with a copy of the draft AWS (i.e., digital information or hard copy information), and invite the First Nation and Métis community to participate in a meeting to discuss the AWS. The purpose of the meeting is to discuss the planned operations with First Nation and Métis communities and provide communities the opportunity to identify any new First Nation and Métis values that are of importance to the First Nation and Métis communities and that may be affected by the forest operations. The Ministry will attend the meeting(s) upon request by the sustainable forest licensee or the First Nation and Métis community.

Following the receipt of the AWS from the sustainable forest licensee, the First Nation and Métis communities will have 60 days to provide comments to the sustainable forest licensee related to the planned operations in the AWS.

Following the 60 day review period by the First Nation and Métis community, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare a summary of First Nation and Métis community involvement on the AWS. The summary will include:

- (a) a summary of communications with each First Nation and Métis community, the dates of any meeting(s), and the primary contact person for each First Nation and Métis community;
- (b) a summary of comments and any new values from each First Nation and Métis community; and
- (c) a summary of how the sustainable forest licensee considered First Nation and Métis community comments and any new values.

The sustainable forest licensee will submit the summary to the Ministry district manager. The Ministry district manager will provide the summary of First Nation and Métis involvement in the AWS to the First Nation and Métis communities at the same time that the First Nation and Métis community notice is issued (Part D, Section 8.2.3).

Normally, within seven days of submission of the summary, the Ministry district manager will determine if any revisions to, or resubmission of the AWS is required, if in his/her opinion those revisions are required to accommodate impacts to asserted or established Aboriginal or treaty rights based on the information provided by the communities. The Ministry district manager will notify the sustainable forest licensee and First Nation and Métis communities if a revision to and resubmission of the AWS is required. .

If a First Nation or Métis community identifies any new values that are of importance to the First Nation or Métis community and that may be affected by the forest operations, the Ministry will invite the community to review and provide comments on the draft updates to the Report on Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values (Part A, Section 3.6.3). The Ministry district manager will contact the First Nation and Métis community to provide the updated final Report on the Protection of Identified First Nation and Métis Values.

8.2.2 Revisions

First Nation and Métis communities will be provided an opportunity to review and comment on revisions to scheduled operations in the AWS in accordance with the Part D, Section 3.5.1 where the Ministry determines that the proposed revision may impact asserted or established Aboriginal or treaty rights, and to ensure there are no new First Nation and Métis values that may be affected by the forest operations identified in the revision.

Any revisions to the AWS will be consistent with the FMP, including any amendments to the FMP. Revisions will be submitted to the Ministry and First Nation and Métis communities in accordance with the FIM and made available with the AWS.

The Ministry will provide the proposed revision(s) of the AWS (i.e., digital information or hard copy information), as submitted by the sustainable forest licensee (Part D, Section 3.5.1), to First Nation and Métis communities where the Ministry determines that the proposed revision may impact asserted or established Aboriginal or treaty rights, and to ensure there are no new First Nation and Métis values that may be affected by the forest operations identified in the revision. If applicable, within seven days of the submission of the revision from the sustainable forest licensee the Ministry district manager will consider the potential impacts to asserted or existing Aboriginal and treaty rights based on the information provided by the communities and determine how much time First Nation and Métis communities will be provided to review the proposed revision.

Where applicable, within seven days following the opportunity to review the proposed revision by the First Nation and Métis communities, the Ministry district manager will determine if the revision may impact asserted or established Aboriginal or treaty rights, and whether further consultation with the First Nation and Métis communities or changes to the proposed revision are required.

8.2.3 First Nation and Métis community notice requirements

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Section 7.1.1 and 7.2 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain an invitation to develop a customized consultation approach and specify that the customized consultation approach may include some or all of the elements listed in Part A, Section 3.4.

8.3 Prescribed burns

First Nation and Métis communities will be provided an opportunity to view the prescribed burn plan before its approval.

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain a portrayal of the prescribed burn area(s) in accordance with the FIM containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of individual prescribed burn area(s).

First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with staff through the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved prescribed burn area(s).

8.4 Aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and road maintenance herbicide application

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

The notice to the First Nation or Métis community will also contain a portrayal of where aerial herbicide or insecticide, or road maintenance herbicide application is planned in accordance with the FIM, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of individual treatment area(s).

First Nation and Métis communities can arrange an appointment with staff through the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the approved aerial herbicide and insecticide projects, and road maintenance herbicide application projects.

8.5 Insect pest management programs

The public notice requirements, including timeframes, described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis

community. The notices will be provided to the First Nation or Métis community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

8.5.1 Review of proposed insect pest management program

The Ministry district manager will contact each First Nation and Métis community to determine whether there is interest in having a First Nation and Métis information forum. At the request of the community, a First Nation and Métis information forum will be provided.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.2 and modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community. The notice will also contain:

- (a) the time and location of the First Nation and Métis information forum; if such an information forum was requested by the First Nation or Métis community; and
- (b) an invitation to review and provide comments on the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects.

A supplemental notice will be issued by the Ministry approximately seven days in advance of the information forum(s) to remind the First Nation or Métis community.

8.5.2 Notification of insect pest management program approval

The public notice requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the First Nation or Métis community.

Table of contents

1.0	Introduction	2
	Phase-in provisions	2
2.0	Content requirements for all management unit annual reports.....	4
2.1	Annual report text	4
2.1.1	Title and certification page	4
2.1.2	Introduction	4
2.1.3	Discussion of forest operations.....	4
2.1.4	Monitoring and assessment.....	5
2.2	Annual report information.....	5
2.2.1	Wood utilization.....	5
2.2.2	Renewal support	5
2.2.3	Expenditures	6
2.2.4	Pesticide use.....	6
2.2.5	Forest operations inspections.....	6
2.2.6	Annual report summary information.....	7
2.3	Prescribed burns	7
2.4	Information products.....	7
3.0	Additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports	8
3.1	Implementation of forest operations - Trend analysis.....	8
3.1.1	Harvest area	8
3.1.2	Harvest volume	9
3.1.3	Renewal and maintenance.....	9
3.1.4	Harvest and regeneration	9
3.1.5	Forest condition	9
3.1.6	Wildlife habitat.....	9
3.1.7	Monitoring and assessment.....	9
3.2	Analysis of silvicultural outcomes.....	10
3.3	Review of assumptions in modelling	10
3.4	Analysis of forest disturbances.....	10
3.5	Assessment of objective achievement	11
3.5.1	Risk assessment.....	12
3.6	Determination of sustainability	13
4.0	Submission and review	14
4.1	All annual reports.....	14
4.2	Additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports.....	14

1.0 Introduction

This part of the manual contains the requirements for management unit annual reporting. An annual report will be prepared for each one-year period (i.e., April 1 to March 31) of the forest management plan (FMP), and will be submitted by the sustainable forest licensee in accordance with the Forest Information Manual (FIM). The annual report will be certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. In those cases where the original plan author of the FMP is no longer employed on the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee will assign the plan author.

Additional requirements for reports on plan implementation for specific management units are described in Part F of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM).

The FIM and applicable technical specification(s) will prescribe the format requirements for information products to be included in the annual report.

For community-based FMPs in Ontario's Far North requirements of Part E of the FMPM will apply subject any modifications the Ministry and the plan author consider necessary in the circumstance and agree upon.

For community-based FMPs in Ontario's Far North requirements for information products to be included in the annual reports will be conducted in accordance with the FIM and applicable technical specification(s) subject to any modifications the Ministry and the sustainable forest licensee consider necessary in the circumstance.

Phase-in provisions

Part E, Section 2.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM except as follows:

- For Independent Forest Audit Action Plans prepared in response to Independent Forest Audits conducted prior to 2018, the process for reporting on the progress towards the completion of actions assigned under an action plan will be completed in accordance with the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol.

Part E, Section 3.0 will apply as of the effective date of this FMPM to year six annual reports and final year annual reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with this FMPM, except as follows:

- Analysis of regeneration reporting, may at the discretion of the plan author, be conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit;

- Analysis of harvest and regeneration trends may, at the discretion of the plan author, be conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit; and
- Analysis of silvicultural activities may, at the discretion of the plan author, be conducted in accordance with the previous approved FMP for the management unit

2.0 Content requirements for all management unit annual reports

2.1 Annual report text

2.1.1 Title and certification page

The annual report title and certification page will be submitted to the Ministry in accordance with the requirements of the FIM.

2.1.2 Introduction

A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the annual report, and identify if the annual report is a year six or final year annual report. The text will identify the relevant Ministry field, district(s) and region(s), and the sustainable forest licensee.

2.1.3 Discussion of forest operations

A discussion of the implementation of road construction, harvest, and renewal and tending operations will address:

- (a) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of road construction and maintenance, and any related concerns;
- (b) the progress towards harvest of the planned harvest area, the reasons for (e.g., inaccurate forest resource inventory) any minor deviations between the planned harvest area and actual harvest boundaries, and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply;
- (c) the progress towards harvest of identified bridging harvest area, and the associated estimated volume from the previous FMP;
- (d) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of renewal and tending, and any related concerns ; and
- (e) the progress towards utilization of the volume associated with the planned harvest area and achievement of the planned volume for each mill, and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply.

If applicable, the text will include a description of any silvicultural trial areas undertaken and provide a summary of any outcomes.

2.1.4 Monitoring and assessment

The text will also include a discussion of:

- (a) any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the implementation of the FMP, and if applicable, the potential for a FMP extension or a contingency plan;
- (b) the monitoring of roads and water crossings, including the effectiveness of access controls, and any related concerns;
- (c) instances of non-compliance, including:
 - (i) the type(s) of non-compliance that occurred;
 - (ii) the cause(s) of those occurrences;
 - (iii) the remedies applied; and
 - (iv) how the sustainable forest licensee will improve the conduct of forest operations to minimize instances of non-compliance;
- (d) the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 3.18.2), if any was undertaken, and any related concerns;
- (e) the progress towards completing the planned assessments of regeneration (i.e., establishment), and any related concerns;
- (f) the progress towards completing the recovery of productive land (e.g., slash piles, chipper piles, landings, and roads decommissioned), and any related concerns; and
- (g) if applicable, the progress towards the completion of all actions assigned under an action plan developed in accordance with the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol (IFAPP)

For forest units that are not successfully established, the annual report text will describe any additional silvicultural treatments required and timing for the next assessment for establishment.

2.2 Annual report information

2.2.1 Wood utilization

The annual report will include information on harvest volume utilized by licensee, harvest area, product, species and harvest volume, and information on harvest volume utilized by mill in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.2 Renewal support

The annual report will include information on seed collection, seed use and trees planted in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.3 Expenditures

The annual report will include information on expenditures for renewal, tending and protection activities from the Forest Renewal Trust and Forestry Futures Trust in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.4 Pesticide use

The annual report will include information for aerial pesticide projects conducted during the current year (i.e., the part of the calendar year immediately preceding the due date of the annual report), required by Ministry of the Environment, Conservation and Parks (MECP) in accordance with the FIM. If an incident occurred during the application of a pesticide, a description of the incident will be included in the annual report. If a complaint on a pesticide project has been received, a description of the details of the complaint will be included in the annual report.

If pesticide application operations occur or are anticipated to occur beyond the November 15 submission requirement of the annual report, an update to the annual report will be submitted as soon as possible.

2.2.5 Forest operations inspections

The annual report will include information that summarizes forest operations inspections in accordance with the FIM.

2.2.6 Annual report summary information

Annual report summary information will be portrayed in accordance with the FIM.

2.3 Prescribed burns

Post-burn reports, as required by the Ministry's Prescribed Burn Manual, will be prepared and submitted with the annual report in accordance with the FIM.

2.4 Information products

The forest operations that were implemented during the year of the annual report will be provided in information products in accordance with the FIM, including;

- (a) areas of harvest operations;
- (b) natural disturbances;
- (c) renewal and maintenance (i.e., tending and protection) operations;
- (d) roads and water crossings;
- (e) forestry aggregate pits;
- (f) wood storage yards; and
- (g) assessment of regeneration.

Areas harvested in two passes will be reported in two annual reports. The first-pass harvest area will be reported as regular harvest area and will contribute to the achievement of the planned harvest area. The second-pass harvest area will be reported in a subsequent annual report and will not contribute to the achievement of the planned harvest area.

The report of natural disturbances will contain net natural disturbance areas for stand replacing events (e.g., fire, blowdown). The sustainable forest licensee will examine the gross natural disturbance area and determine the net natural disturbance area.

Areas harvested under the selection silvicultural system that are predominantly non-commercial improvement cuts will be identified as natural under regeneration treatment.

Areas planned for natural regeneration will normally be reported in the year that the disturbance (i.e., harvest, natural) occurred. If salvage harvest is being considered in areas of natural disturbance, reporting of natural regeneration may be delayed for one or two years.

3.0 Additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports

In addition to the requirements for all annual reports described in Part E, Section 2.0, the requirements described in this section will apply to the year six annual report and the annual report for the final year of implementation of the FMP.

Additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports for the specific management units are described in Part F of the FMPPM.

The year six annual report will include an assessment, analysis, and review of the implementation of the first six years of the FMP (i.e., operational objectives and trends analysis information). The year six annual report will provide conclusions and recommendations to be addressed in the preparation of the next FMP.

The annual report for the final year will update the assessment, analysis and review in the year six annual report to reflect the full implementation of the FMP. The final year annual report will also:

- (a) identify any significant events (e.g., natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the achievement of objectives in the FMP;
- (b) assess the long-term harvest level indicators, forest diversity indicators, and forest cover indicators of the FMP; and
- (c) assess the overall achievement of objectives in the FMP.

3.1 Implementation of forest operations - Trend analysis

The trends analysis information for the current FMP and the previous FMPs will be submitted in accordance with the FIM. This information and the associated analysis will replace the similarly required information in the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol (IFAPP). Where the information is not available for an independent forest audit, the requirements of the IFAPP will apply.

3.1.1 Harvest area

The annual report will include planned and actual harvest area information for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs (including any bridging areas). The trend analysis will discuss trends in harvest levels, and the spatial distribution of harvested areas (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

The area of depleted bridging operations identified in the current FMP will be reported as harvested in the trend analysis. The areas of bridging will be reported as described in the FMP (e.g., in the year six or final year annual report of the current FMP).

3.1.2 Harvest volume

The annual report will include information of planned and actual harvest volume for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs (including estimated volume associated with bridging harvest areas). The analysis will discuss trends with planned and actual harvest volume and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.3 Renewal and maintenance

The annual report will include information of planned and actual renewal, tending and protection area for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends with planned and actual renewal, tending and protection area and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.4 Harvest and regeneration

The annual report will include information that summarizes areas of harvest and regeneration for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends with areas of harvest and regeneration and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.5 Forest condition

The annual report will include information of forest condition for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends with the forest condition and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.6 Wildlife habitat

If applicable, the annual report will include information indicating the amount of wildlife habitat for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs. The analysis will discuss trends with wildlife habitat and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

3.1.7 Monitoring and assessment

The annual report will include a summary of the discussions of the monitoring and assessment program (Part E, Section 2.1.4) from the annual reports, and assess progress made in implementing the planned program. Implications on the achievement of objectives will be discussed.

3.2 Analysis of silvicultural outcomes

An analysis of silvicultural outcomes will be prepared by a registered professional forester and documented in the text of the year six and final year annual report.

The analysis for the year six and final year annual report will include a discussion of:

- (a) planned vs. actual silvicultural activities and the identification of significant variances;
- (b) planned vs. actual silvicultural expenditures, and the identification of significant variances;
- (c) planned vs. actual silvicultural strata and any implications to forest level objectives;
- (d)
- (e) the effectiveness of SGRs; and
- (f) the assessment of regeneration establishment.

The analysis will include conclusions and recommended changes for consideration in the determination of future silvicultural activities and expenditures, and the continued use of effective SGRs and yield predictions. The analysis will also document how implications to forest level objectives will be considered in future annual work schedules.

3.3 Review of assumptions in modelling

In the preparation of a FMP, the development of the proposed management direction for the forest is based on a number of model assumptions (Part A, Section 1.2.4). The trend analysis for the implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 3.1) and the analysis of silvicultural outcomes (Part E, Section 3.2) will be reviewed. The year six annual report text will discuss and compare assumptions and projections in the model with actual operations and results as reported in annual reports. Any issues identified with model assumptions, and conclusions and recommendations for modifications or refinements for the next FMP, will be documented in the text of the year six annual report.

3.4 Analysis of forest disturbances

The final year annual report text will describe any implications of the area harvested and new natural disturbances on the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern. Recommendations to be considered in the planning of future harvest areas will be documented.

3.5 Assessment of objective achievement

An assessment of the achievement of management objectives in the FMP will be documented in the text of the annual report. The information provided in all of the annual reports for the current FMP will be considered. The assessment will examine management objectives, indicators and targets that were identified in the FMP for assessment at year six (i.e., operational objectives and trends analysis information) and the final year of implementation of the FMP (i.e., operational objectives, trends analysis information, and long-term projection information).

The assessment of the achievement of management objectives for the long-term harvest level indicators, forest diversity indicators, and forest cover indicators of the FMP will be documented in the final year annual report and will be supported through the modeling and analysis of planned and actual levels of forest operations for the period of the FMP.

The independent forest audit action plan, and progress towards the completion of assigned actions as reported in accordance with Part E, Section 2.1.4 or reported on in accordance with the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol will be considered when assessing objective achievement.

A summary of the assessment of objective achievement will be reported in accordance with the FIM.

The assessment will consider and the text will discuss the following for each objective in the FMP:

- (a) What is the difference between the target and the actual level achieved, and does the difference have implications on sustainability?
- (b) Has the target been achieved, or is progress being made on achievement of the target?
- (c) Is the difference a result of inaccurate predictions because of modeling assumptions and inputs?
- (d) Is the difference a result of unforeseen circumstances?
- (e) Do the differences infer that the modeling assumptions require modification to better represent the local forest?
- (f) Do the levels of objective achievement suggest a need to change objectives or make adjustments to the management direction for the forest?

For appropriate management objectives in the FMP that are directly associated with one of the four categories of objectives required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994* (CFSA) the assessment will consider and the text will discuss:

- (a) Social and Economic
 - (i) Does the information for wood utilization by licensee and mill of this annual report and equivalent information in previous annual reports for the FMP indicate that the available harvest area and associated volume are being fully utilized?
 - (ii) Do the trends in forest condition indicate a concern with the area available for forest management?
 - (iii) Did implementation of the FMP contribute to mill and community stability?
 - (iv) Were the desired benefit targets achieved?
 - (v) Were opportunities provided to First Nation and Métis communities to be involved in the preparation and implementation of the FMP?
 - (vi) Was the LCC effective during the preparation and implementation of the FMP?
- (b) Forest Diversity
 - (i) Was there a substantive change in forest structure and composition?
 - (ii) Do the forest condition trends indicate progress towards the desired forest condition?
 - (iii) Are the landscape pattern target(s) being achieved?
 - (iv) Are there any factors that may be interfering with forest diversity objective achievement?
 - (vii)
- (c) Forest Cover
 - (i) If applicable, were the habitat targets for selected wildlife species and known species at risk achieved?
 - (ii) If applicable, do the trends indicate a concern with the area of habitat for any selected wildlife species or species at risk?
- (d) Silviculture
 - (i) Were all planned renewal operations undertaken?
 - (ii) Did renewal treatments produce the anticipated results?
 - (iii) Did the forest grow and develop as projected?

If targets were not achieved, the assessment will provide reasons, a discussion of the management implications, and recommendations for future planning.

3.5.1 Risk assessment

The risks investigated with implementation of the management direction (Part B, Section 3.7.6) will be assessed to identify any implications on objective achievement. A discussion of any

management implications and recommendations for future planning will be documented in the text of the final year annual report.

3.6 Determination of sustainability

The determination of sustainability in the final year annual report will conclude whether the implementation of the FMP has provided for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the forest on the management unit, through a collective assessment of objective achievement. The determination of sustainability will conclude whether a balance of social, economic and environmental objectives is being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The determination of sustainability will consider the following questions:

- (a) are the levels of objective achievement within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?
- (b) is there a relationship between the objectives that are not within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the levels of objective achievement related to a common forest type, or a particular CFSA objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1))?
- (c) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?
- (d) are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
- (e) are actual operations and results as reported in annual reports consistent with assumptions and projections in the model and FMP?
- (f) have the components of the independent forest audit action plan that pertain to objective achievement and sustainability been implemented?

Documentation of the determination of sustainability will be included in the text of the final year annual report. The documentation will:

- (a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives and provide rationale for any management objectives where desirable levels are not achieved; and
- (b) provide a conclusion as to whether the implementation of planned operations has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

4.0 Submission and review

4.1 All annual reports

Before the submission of the annual report to the Ministry, the plan author will ensure the annual report is complete and meets the content requirements of the FMPM and the FIM;

- (a) calculations are correct;
- (b) is structured consistent with Part E of this manual;
- (c) is edited for ease of understanding; and
- (d) contains page and line numbers.

On behalf of the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author will submit the annual report to the Ministry by November 15 in accordance with the requirements of the FIM and Part E of this manual.

The Ministry will have the opportunity to review the annual report for completeness and accuracy. If a review is completed, a list of required modifications, and rationale for those modifications will be prepared, and certified by a Ministry registered professional forester. Under the authority of the district manager, the Ministry will provide the results of the review to the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The plan author will address the comments and provide the Ministry with documentation on how the comments have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15 of the following year.

The plan author will present the completed annual report to the local citizens' committee (LCC), in a manner determined by the Ministry MNR district manager in consultation with the committee.

The annual report will remain available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the Ontario Government website. First Nation and Métis communities, interested and affected persons, and organizations can arrange an appointment with the appropriate Ministry office to discuss the annual report.

4.2 Additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports

The forest operations that were implemented during the year of the annual report will be submitted in information products in accordance with the FIM.

For the year six and final year annual reports, the trends analysis information for the current FMP and the previous three FMPs, and the associated analysis and assessment documentation (e.g., implications on achievement of objectives) will be submitted as a separate individual information product in accordance with the FIM.

The Ministry will review the year six and final year annual reports, over a period of 30 days commencing November 15, or on the submission date if received prior to or after November 15. A list of required modifications, and rationale for those modifications will be prepared, and certified by a Ministry registered professional forester. The Ministry district manager and regional resources manager will forward the list of required alterations, if any, to the plan author. The plan author will address the required alterations and provide the Ministry district manager and regional resources manager with documentation on how the alterations have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15, or 60 days from the receipt of the Ministry's required alterations.

Within 15 days of the required alterations being addressed to the satisfaction of the Ministry district manager and regional resources manager, the MNRF district manager and regional resources manager will sign the annual report in a format prescribed by the FIM and recommend the annual report for approval by the Ministry regional director..

If requested by the Ministry regional director, the plan author and representatives of the planning team, including the representative of the LCC, will make a presentation of the annual report to the MNRF regional director. The Ministry district manager, Ministry regional resources manager, and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

If the Ministry regional director agrees with the Ministry district manager's and regional resources manager's recommendations, the Ministry regional director will approve the annual report, normally by March 1. The Ministry regional director will sign the year six and final year annual reports in the format prescribed by the FIM.

Table of contents

Part F – Management unit specific direction	4
Phase-in provisions	4
Whitefeather forest	5
Part A - Forest management planning process	5
1.0 Preparing the ten-year forest management plan	5
1.1 Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning	5
1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders	5
1.1.2 Planning team	5
1.1.2.1 Terms of reference	5
1.1.2.2 Project plan	6
1.1.8 Assembly and update of background information	6
1.1.8.1 Sources of direction	6
1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge	6
1.2 Preparing for stage two – Proposed management direction for the forest management plan	7
1.2.1 Introduction	7
1.2.6 Primary road corridors	7
1.2.10 Roads	8
3.0 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning	9
3.1 Introduction	9
3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders	9
3.2 Planning team	9
3.4 Development of a customized consultation approach for forest management planning	9
3.6 Documentation	10
3.6.1 First Nation and Métis background information report	10
Part B – Forest management plan content requirements	10
3.0 Development of the management direction	10
3.7 Management direction - Strategic planning	10
3.8 Management direction - Tactical planning	10
3.13 Operational planning	11
3.13.1 Introduction	11
3.16 Roads	11
3.18 Monitoring and assessment	11
3.18.1 Forest operations inspections	11
3.18.2 Exceptions	11
3.18.3 Assessment of regeneration	11
5.0 Documentation	12
5.1 Supplementary documentation	12
Part E – Management unit annual reports	12
1.0 Introduction	12

3.0	Additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports	12
3.1	Implementation of forest operations - Trend analysis.....	12
3.1.6	Wildlife habitat.....	12
3.5	Assessment of objective achievement	13
5.0	Reports to Pikangikum First Nation.....	14
5.1	Introduction	14
5.2	Annual report on forest management plan implementation.....	14
5.3	Summary report on forest management plan implementation.....	14
5.3.1	Summary report on forest management plan implementation - year six	15
5.3.2	Summary report on forest management plan implementation - year eight	15
5.4	Final summary report on forest management plan implementation	16
	Cat-Slate Forest	17
	Part A – Forest management planning process.....	17
1.0	Preparing for the ten-year forest management plan	17
1.1	Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning	17
1.1.1.2	Role of Elders	17
1.1.2	Planning team	17
1.1.2.1	Terms of reference	17
1.1.2.2	Project plan	18
1.1.8	Assembly and update of background information	18
1.1.8.1	Sources of direction	18
1.1.8.14	Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge	18
1.2	Preparing for stage two – Proposed management direction for the forest management plan.....	19
1.2.6	Primary road corridors	19
1.2.10	Roads.....	19
3.0	First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning.....	21
3.1	Introduction	21
3.1.1	Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders.....	21
3.2	Planning team	21
3.4	Development of a customized consultation approach for forest management planning	21
3.6	Documentation	22
3.6.1	First Nation and Métis background information report.....	22
	Part B – Forest management plan content requirements	22
3.13	Operational planning.....	22
3.16	Roads.....	22
3.18	Monitoring and assessment	22
3.18.1	Forest operations inspections.....	22
3.18.2	Exceptions	22
4.7.3	Assessment of regeneration	23
5.0	Documentation	23
5.1	Supplementary documentation.....	23

Part E – Management unit annual reports	23
1.0 Introduction	23
5.0 Reports to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation	23
5.1 Introduction	23
5.2 Annual report on forest management plan implementation.....	24
5.3 Summary report on forest management plan implementation.....	24
5.3.1 Summary report on forest management plan implementation - year six.....	24
5.3.2 Summary report on plan implementation - year eight.....	25
5.4 Final summary report on forest management plan implementation	26

Part F – Management unit specific direction

Part F describes requirements that are in addition to those described in Parts A, B, and E of this Forest Management Planning Manual (FMPM) for specific management units.

Section numbers of Part F correspond to the related sections of Parts A, B and E. New section numbers are introduced in Part F if no such related section exists.

Phase-in provisions

The requirements of Part F will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Whitefeather forest

Part A - Forest management planning process

1.0 Preparing the ten-year forest management plan

1.1 Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning

1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest, and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum’s customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the Local Citizens Committee (LCC). Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve the Ministry of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

1.1.2 Planning team

For the Whitefeather Forest, the Ministry district manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community’s leadership.

1.1.2.1 Terms of reference

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

- (f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

1.1.2.2 Project plan

For the Whitefeather Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks that are assigned to the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation on the planning team.

1.1.8 Assembly and update of background information

For the Whitefeather Forest, the background information that will be available for the period of forest management plan (FMP) preparation will also include:

- (o) Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

1.1.8.1 Sources of direction

For the Whitefeather Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making will also include:

- (p) the existing approved land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest (Keeping the Land: A Land Use Strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and Adjacent Areas), or its successor.

1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge will be part of the background information that will be available for use in planning, to support the incorporation of Pikangikum customary stewardship practices. Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Pikangikum people.

Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites, ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge will be documented in the values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10), and some may be documented in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

Many aspects of Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are intimately tied to language. Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and teachings. To ensure Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge is available for use in planning, another source of information will be the Pikangikum people, particularly the elders.

The approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

1.2 Preparing for stage two – Proposed management direction for the forest management plan

1.2.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the development of the management direction, the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e. spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning team will be guided by Ministry policy direction, and the strategic land use direction for caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to time.

A description of how the management direction provides for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared and documented in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

1.2.6 Primary road corridors

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-year period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The description will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

1.2.10 Roads

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

3.0 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum’s customary decision-making approach and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve the Ministry of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

3.2 Planning team

For the Whitefeather Forest, the Ministry district manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. If the community chooses to participate on the planning team, the representative will be identified by the community’s leadership.

3.4 Development of a customized consultation approach for forest management planning

For the Whitefeather Forest, the consultation approach for Pikangikum First Nation will provide an opportunity for Pikangikum First Nation to build community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation

opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation or Métis community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Pikangikum community input.

3.6 Documentation

3.6.1 First Nation and Métis background information report

For the Whitefeather Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also include:

- (e) a description of the approach to incorporating Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

Part B – Forest management plan content requirements

3.0 Development of the management direction

3.7 Management direction - Strategic planning

A description of how the management direction (i.e. strategic planning components) provides for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

3.8 Management direction - Tactical planning

A description of how the management direction (i.e., tactical planning components) provides for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP

3.13 Operational planning

3.13.1 Introduction

A description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

3.16 Roads

A description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period, has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

3.18 Monitoring and assessment

3.18.1 Forest operations inspections

For the Whitefeather Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

3.18.2 Exceptions

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

- (e) the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

3.18.3 Assessment of regeneration

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration will also include the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders,

trappers and other community members to gather and record Pikangikum Indigenous knowledge.

5.0 Documentation

5.1 Supplementary documentation

For the Whitefeather Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

- (o) a description of how the management direction provides for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest;
- (p) a description of how the planned operations for the ten-year period provide for a continuous supply of habitat for caribou (boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest;
- (q) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in Keeping the Land; and
- (r) the objective in Keeping the Land to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

Part E – Management unit annual reports

1.0 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Part F, Section 5.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

3.0 Additional requirements for the year six and final year annual reports

3.1 Implementation of forest operations - Trend analysis

3.1.6 Wildlife habitat

For the Whitefeather Forest, caribou (boreal population) will be one of the wildlife species included in the analysis of wildlife habitat. The analysis of the information will include a discussion of trends for caribou (boreal population) habitat, and any implications for the achievement of the management objective for caribou (boreal population) habitat in the current FMP.

3.5 Assessment of objective achievement

For the Whitefeather Forest, the management objective for caribou (boreal population) habitat in the current FMP will be one of the objectives included in the assessment of objective achievement. The summary of the assessment of objective achievement in the text of the management unit annual report will include a discussion of the achievement of the habitat target for caribou (boreal population) in the current FMP, and any concerns arising from the analysis of trends for caribou (boreal population) habitat (Part E, Section 3.1.6).

5.0 Reports to Pikangikum First Nation

5.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Those reports include:

- (a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part F, Section 5.2);
- (b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the sixth and eighth years (Part F, Section 5.3); and
- (c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion of plan implementation (Part F, Section 5.4).

5.2 Annual report on forest management plan implementation

In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on FMP implementation for the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group. The management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to the Ministry in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Pikangikum First Nation during the year, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) the amount of area harvested during the year;
- (c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and
- (d) the names of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members who participated in monitoring of FMP implementation during the year.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products in the management unit annual report for the applicable year of FMP implementation will be available to assist with communication of the report.

5.3 Summary report on forest management plan implementation

In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare summary reports for Pikangikum First Nation in each of the fifth and eighth years.

5.3.1 Summary report on forest management plan implementation - year six

In the sixth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First Nation.

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Pikangikum First Nation to date, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) identification of the Pikangikum First Nation traplines affected by forest operations to date;
- (c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:
 - (i) kilometres of road construction;
 - (ii) area of harvest;
 - (iii) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn, mechanical, herbicides);
 - (iv) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);
 - (v) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g., manual, herbicides); and
 - (vi) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);
- (d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been decommissioned to date;
- (e) a summary of the participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members in monitoring of FMP implementation to date, including a summary of the information recorded by Pikangikum First Nation participants; and
- (f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that have been provided for Pikangikum First Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a summary of the participation of members of Pikangikum First Nation in those educational opportunities.

The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation.

5.3.2 Summary report on forest management plan implementation - year eight

In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The year six management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to the Ministry in November of the seventh year of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year six. In addition, the report will include:

- (a) a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of the goals and objectives in *Keeping the Land*; and
- (b) a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending operations (Part E, Section 3.2).

The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation in the early stages of the planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products in the year six management unit annual report will also be available.

5.4 Final summary report on forest management plan implementation

In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare a final summary report on FMP implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The final year management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to the Ministry in November of the first year after completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Pikangikum Chief and Council, the Whitefeather Steering Group and the Pikangikum community. The information products in the final year management unit annual report will be available to assist with communication of the report.

Cat-Slate Forest

Part A – Forest management planning process

1.0 Preparing for the ten-year forest management plan

1.1 Preparing for stage one – Organizing for planning

1.1.1.2 Role of Elders

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding role in in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the forest. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Cat Lake First Nation’s and Slate Falls Nation’s customary decision-making approaches, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on customary stewardship traditions.

Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve the Ministry of the obligation to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

1.1.2 Planning team

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

1.1.2.1 Terms of reference

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

- (f) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

1.1.2.2 Project plan

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks that are assigned to the representatives of Cat-Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation on the planning team.

1.1.8 Assembly and update of background information

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the background information that will be available for the period of FMP preparation will also include:

- (o) Cat-Lake First Nation’s and Slate Falls Nation’s Indigenous knowledge.

1.1.8.1 Sources of direction

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making will also include:

- (k) the existing approved land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest (“Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life), or its successor.

1.1.8.14 Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge will be part of the background information that will be available for use in planning to support the incorporation of their customary stewardship practices. Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation people, as the case may be.

Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites, ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge will be documented in the values information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10), and some may be documented in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

Many aspects of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are intimately tied to language. Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and

Table of contents

Appendix I: Primary roads supplementary documentation form..... 2
Appendix II: area of concern supplementary documentation form..... 5
Appendix III: operational standards for forestry aggregate pits 9
Appendix IV: operational standards for wood storage yards 11

Appendix I: Primary roads supplementary documentation form

Complete Part A, sections 1 to 6 for each new primary road that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part A, section 7 for each confirmed primary road corridor that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

A: Primary road corridors

Complete Part A for each new primary road.

Road name/identifier:

1. Alternative corridors

Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

Considerations which support the reasonable range of practical alternative corridors for analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):

2. Environmental analysis of alternative corridors

Complete this section for each alternative corridor prior to stage two of consultation.

- (a) Identify (number) and portray each alternative corridor and provide a description at stage two of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate information product in the draft and final plan;
- (b) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):
 - (i) discuss relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors;
 - (ii) identify use management strategy(s) and if the use management strategy(s) differ discuss the relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7); and
 - (iii) discuss the relative costs of construction and use management of the alternative corridors.

3. Summary of public comments

Complete this section after stage two of consultation.

4. Proposed corridor

Complete this section prior to stage three of consultation.

- (a) Identify (number) and portray the proposed corridor and provide a description at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate information product in the draft and final plan;
- (b) rationale for proposed corridor; and
- (c) use management strategy;

5. Summary of public comments

Complete this section after stage three of consultation.

6. Selected corridor

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 4(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.

7. Changes to a confirmed primary road corridor road use management strategy

Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7):

Provide the rationale for the change in road use management strategy.

Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

Summary of public comments

Complete this section after stage two and three of consultation.

Use management strategy

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.

Appendix II: area of concern supplementary documentation form

This appendix is organized into three parts:

- A: Operational Prescription and Condition
- B: Primary Road Crossings
- C: Monitoring Program

Complete Part A, and if applicable Part E for each individual AOC or a group of areas of concern with common values for which an operational prescription or condition is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions or conditions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

Complete Part A, Part B, and if applicable Part C for each individual AOC which is crossed by a primary road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3

A: Operational prescription and conditions

Complete Part A for each individual AOC, or a group of areas of concern with common values, for which an operational prescription or condition is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

1. Environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions and conditions

Complete this section for each alternative operational prescription prior to stage two of consultation.

- (a) alternative identifier/number;
- (b) description of proposed operational prescription and condition:
(Specify dimensions of reserve, if applicable, and/or modifications to regular harvest, renewal and/or tending operations, if applicable.)
- (c) environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team, items (a) & (b)):

2. Proposed operational prescription and condition

Complete this section for the proposed operational prescription and condition prior to stage three of consultation.

- (a) Description:
- (b) Rationale
- (c) Exception: (Specify if the operational prescription and condition is an exception, and identify applicable forest management guide, section and page reference.)

3. Summary of public comments

Complete this section after stage two and three of consultation.

4. Selected prescription

If the proposed operational prescription and condition is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected operational prescription and condition is different from the proposed operational prescription and condition, complete the requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected operational prescription and condition.

B: Primary road crossing

Complete Part B if public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an AOC by a new primary, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

Road name/identifier:

Summary of public comments

Complete this section after stage two and three of consultation.

C: Monitoring program

Complete Part C if the operational prescription and condition for the individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common value, which was prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, is an exception to the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide, or if special requirements of a forest operations inspection(s) are prescribed. (NOTE: Do not complete Part C if the regular forest operations inspection program applies.)

1. Proposed monitoring program

Complete this section prior to stage two of consultation.

- (a) Description;
- (b) Methods to monitor effectiveness of exception prescription

2. Summary of public comments

Complete this section after stage two and three of consultation.

3. Monitoring program

If the proposed monitoring program is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the monitoring program is different from the proposed monitoring program, complete the requirements of section 1 for the monitoring program.

Appendix III: operational standards for forestry aggregate pits

The following operational standards apply to the extraction of aggregate resources for forestry aggregate pits:

1. Topsoil and overburden, where present, must be stripped and stored on site.
2. Aggregate material may be removed only within areas where access, harvest, or aggregate extraction has been planned and approved, with no removal occurring within 15 metres of the boundary of any planned area.
3. Aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern, except:
 - (a) for a cultural heritage landscape or historic Aboriginal value, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, if,
 - (i) the operational prescriptions and conditions for the area of concern of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, as per the advice of a qualified individual as defined by the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, and
 - (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions;
 - (b) for all other values, if,
 - (i) the operational prescriptions and conditions for the area of concern of the FMP documents conditions on location, construction or use of the forestry aggregate pit, and
 - (ii) the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions.
4. Notwithstanding standard 3 above, aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern for the following values, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values:
 - (a) archaeology site;
 - (b) cemetery; or
 - (c) archaeological potential area.
5. When operating within 15 metres of a proposed roadside ditch, no excavation is to take place below the elevation of the planned depth of the proposed ditch; all excavations must be immediately sloped to no steeper than a 2:1 (horizontal: vertical) angle.
6. During extraction, no undercutting of the working face is permitted and:
 - (a) the working face must be sloped at the angle of repose; or

- (b) the vertical height of the working face must not be more than 1.5 metres above the maximum reach of the equipment.
7. All trees within 5 metres of the excavation face must be removed.
 8. The maximum pit area must not exceed 3 ha. When a pit or a portion of a pit is rehabilitated, it is no longer part of the pit.
 9. When the site is inactive (i.e., equipment is removed from the site), all pit faces must be sloped at the angle of repose.
 10. Within the excavation area, no ponding is allowed and offsite drainage must be designed to prevent sediment from entering any water feature.
 11. The Ministry may direct that a forestry aggregate pit be rehabilitated where the responsibility for the road and associated forestry aggregate pit is being transferred back to the Ministry.
 12. Final rehabilitation must include:
 - (a) sloping of all pit faces to normally a minimum of 3:1 (horizontal:vertical);
 - (b) re-spreading of any topsoil and overburden that was stripped from the site; and
 - (c) mitigative measures, to the satisfaction of the Ministry, to prevent erosion (e.g., establishment of vegetation).
 13. Existing or proposed forestry aggregate pits within areas of concern, or in the vicinity of features that are addressed by conditions on operations, as described in the Ministry's forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, must not be constructed or operated except in circumstances as identified in the conditions on operations in the FMP. This includes any restrictions on the construction of new forestry aggregate pits and timing of aggregate extraction, rehabilitation, or other associated operations in existing pits.
 14. Progressive rehabilitation of the site must be ongoing starting from the commencement of the forestry aggregate pit.
 15. If a forestry aggregate pit has not been active for a period of five years and the sustainable forest licensee confirms that future use of the pit is not required, final rehabilitation must be completed in accordance with standard 12 above within 12 months of the sustainable forest licensee's confirmation.

Despite standard 15, if the Ministry agrees that access to the pit that requires rehabilitation is not feasible within the 12-month period specified, the Ministry and the sustainable forest licensee may agree, in writing, to a longer period.

Appendix IV: operational standards for wood storage yards

The following operating standards apply to identified wood storage yards:

1. Wood shall not be stockpiled on the corner of a road.
2. Wood shall not be stockpiled within the travelled portion of a road corridor.
3. If forestry aggregate pits are to be used for storage, they must be confirmed to be a forestry pit, not one granted to another licence holder or permittee under the Aggregate Resources Act.
4. The wood shall not be stockpiled within 30 metres of a waterbody or watercourse.
5. After use, the wood storage yard must be revegetated to a condition of its former state to the extent reasonably possible;
6. Debris will be managed as per the slash management section of the FMP and debris (e.g. brush, slash, topsoil) shall not be deposited in ditches or on the shoulders of any road or below the high-water mark of any waterbody or watercourse;
7. Damage caused by the licence holder's use of existing roads, water crossings or ditches (for access to the wood storage yards) may be subject to repair and/or rehabilitation at the expense of the licence holder;
8. For identified values and important ecological features within or adjacent to existing or proposed wood storage yards, operational prescriptions and conditions as described in Ministry's forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, must be applied in accordance with the FMP.

This includes any restrictions on the construction of new wood storage yards, and the timing, use, revegetation or other associated operations in existing wood storage yards;

9. Conditions for wood movement and measurement for wood storage yards must be approved in writing by the Ministry's Regional Supervisor, Wood Measurement Section, prior to use. Failure to comply with any conditions set out in this written approval is considered a failure to comply with the conditions set out in the approved FMP. The start date and end date of the use of the wood storage yard must be supplied to the Ministry so that these dates are included in the written approval.

teachings. To ensure Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge is available for use in planning, another source of information will be the Cat Lake and Slate Falls people, particularly the elders.

The approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report (Part A, Section 3.6.1).

1.2 Preparing for stage two – Proposed management direction for the forest management plan

1.2.6 Primary road corridors

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-year period of the FMP through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management as set out in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The description will be included in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

1.2.10 Roads

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the FMP will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future

Life, and the objective in “Niigaan Bimaadziwin” – A Future Life to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

3.0 First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation in forest management planning

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Role of Cat Lake and Slate Falls Elders

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest, and include the provision for strategic advice, communication with the Cat Lake and Slate Falls communities, and building Cat Lake and Slate Falls community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of the Cat Lake's and Slate Falls 'customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Cat Lake and Slate Falls customary stewardship traditions.

Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders will be represented through the Cat-Slate Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group, to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Cat-Slate Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation representation on the planning team and the LCC. Communication with the Cat-Slate Steering Group does not relieve the Ministry of the obligation to consult with Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

3.2 Planning team

For the Cat-Slate Forest, Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will each have representation on the planning team. The leadership of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will identify one or more representatives to participate on the planning team.

3.4 Development of a customized consultation approach for forest management planning

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the consultation approach for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation will provide an opportunity for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to build community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent First Nation and Métis community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to

incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Cat Lake and Slate Falls community input.

3.6 Documentation

3.6.1 First Nation and Métis background information report

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the First Nation and Métis Background Information Report will also include:

- (e) a description of the approach to incorporating Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation Indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

Part B – Forest management plan content requirements

3.13 Operational planning

3.16 Roads

A description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period, has addressed the direction for access development and management in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest and the objective to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the FMP.

3.18 Monitoring and assessment

3.18.1 Forest operations inspections

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge.

3.18.2 Exceptions

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

- (e) the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Cat Lake and Slate Falls Indigenous knowledge.

4.7.3 Assessment of regeneration

For the Cat-slate Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration will also include the opportunities for participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers, and other community members to gather and record Indigenous knowledge.

5.0 Documentation

5.1 Supplementary documentation

For the Cat-Slate Forest, the supplementary documentation of the FMP will also include:

- (o) a description of how the planning of primary and branch road corridors and operational road boundaries for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest; and
- (p) the objective in the community based land use plan for the Cat-Slate Forest to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Cat-Slate Forest.

Part E – Management unit annual reports

1.0 Introduction

For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Part E, Section 5.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

5.0 Reports to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation

5.1 Introduction

For the Cat-Slate Forest, additional reports on FMP implementation will be prepared for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. Those reports include:

- (a) an annual report on FMP implementation each year (Part F, Section 5.2);

- (b) a summary report on FMP implementation in each of the sixth and eighth years (Part F, Section 5.3); and
- (c) a final summary report on FMP implementation in the year after completion of plan implementation (Part F, Section 5.4).

5.2 Annual report on forest management plan implementation

In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an annual report on FMP implementation for the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council and the Cat-Slate Steering Group. The management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to the Ministry in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation during the year, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) the amount of area harvested during the year;
- (c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and
- (d) the names of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and other community members who participated in monitoring of FMP implementation during the year.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council and the Cat-Slate Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products in the management unit annual report for the applicable year of FMP implementation will be available to assist with communication of the report.

5.3 Summary report on forest management plan implementation

In addition to the annual report on FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare summary reports for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in each of the sixth and eighth years.

5.3.1 Summary report on forest management plan implementation - year six

In the sixth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare a summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

The contents of the report will include:

- (a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation to date, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;
- (b) identification of the Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation traplines affected by forest operations to date;
- (c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:
 - (vii) kilometres of road construction;
 - (viii) area of harvest;
 - (ix) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn, mechanical, herbicides);
 - (x) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);
 - (xi) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g. manual, herbicides); and
 - (xii) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);
- (d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been decommissioned to date;
- (e) a summary of the participation of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation elders, trappers and other community members in monitoring of plan implementation to date, including a summary of the information recorded by Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation participants; and
- (f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that have been provided for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a summary of the participation of members of Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in those educational opportunities.

The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation.

5.3.2 Summary report on plan implementation - year eight

In the eighth year of FMP implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare an updated summary report on FMP implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The year six management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to the Ministry in November of the seventh year of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information that was included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year six. In addition, the report will include:

- (a) a summary of how FMP implementation to date has contributed to the achievement of the management objectives of the FMP, and achievement of the goals and objectives in “Niigaan Bimaadiziwin” – A Future Life; and
- (b) a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending operations (Part E, Section 3.2).

The report will be made available to Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation in the early stages of the planning of the next FMP, which begins in year eight. The information products in the year six management unit annual report will also be available.

5.4 Final summary report on forest management plan implementation

In the year after completion of FMP implementation (i.e., year eleven), the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of the Ministry, will prepare a final summary report on plan implementation for Cat Lake First Nation and Slate Falls Nation. The final year management unit annual report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to the Ministry in November of the first year after completion of FMP implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the summary report on FMP implementation – year eight, to reflect the full implementation of the FMP.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Cat Lake First Nation Chief and Council and Slate Falls Nation Chief and Council, the Cat-Slate Steering Group and the Cat Lake and Slate Falls communities. The information products in the final year management unit annual report will be available to assist with communication of the report.

Glossary of terms

The purpose of this glossary is to define and to explain terms, used in forestry or otherwise, which appear and are of importance in the text of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The definitions provided in this glossary have been taken fully, modified or adapted from an already existing source, as indicated. References for these entries are abbreviated as follows:

Aird	Aird, Paul L., "Conservation for the sustainable development of forests worldwide: A compendium of concepts and terms" <i>The Forestry Chronicle</i> . 70(6) (1994)
ARM	Access Roads Manual (August 1992)
CBS95	Canadian Biodiversity Strategy. Canada's Response to the Convention on Biological Diversity (1995)
CFSA	<i>Crown Forest Sustainability Act</i> (1994)
EAA	<i>The Environmental Assessment Act</i> (1975)
EA Decision	Environmental Assessment Board's <i>Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02)</i> (1994)
EALS	An Ecosystem Approach to Living Sustainably. A Perspective for the Ministry of Natural Resources (September 1995)
ESA	<i>Endangered Species Act</i> (2007)
FIM	Forest Information Manual (2020)
FITC	Forest Inventory Terms in Canada. Canadian Forest Inventory Committee, Forestry Canada (1988)
FMPM	Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests (2020)
Forman	Forman, R. T. T. and M. Godron. <i>Landscape Ecology</i> . John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y. (1986)
FOSM	Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (2020)
FRWCI	Forest Roads and Water Crossings Initiative, Task Team Report (2003)

Kimmins	Oct. 3, 1993, Module 2.
MFM	Manual of Forest Management Plan Requirements for the Province of Ontario (1977)
MNR 1997	A Silvicultural Guide to Managing for Black Spruce, Jack Pine and Aspen on Boreal Forest Ecosites in Ontario (1997)
MNR 1998	A Silvicultural Guide for the Tolerant Hardwood Forest in Ontario (1998)
MNR 2010	Forest Management Guide for Conserving Biodiversity at the Stand and Site Scales (2010)
MNRF 2015	Forest Management Guide to Silviculture in the Great Lakes-St. Lawrence and Boreal Forests of Ontario (2015)
OG	Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forest (2003)
PA	<i>The Pesticides Act</i> , Revised Statutes of Ontario, 1990, Chapter P.11. Printed by the Queen's Printer for Ontario (1993)
SFR	State of the Forest Report (2001)
SM	Scaling Manual (2020)
Smith et al. 1997	Smith, D. M., B. C. Larson, M. J. Kelty, and P. M. S. Ashton. 1997. <i>The practice of silviculture: applied forest ecology</i> . John Wiley, New York, New York, USA.
STC	Silvicultural Terms in Canada. Science and Sustainable Development Directorate, Forestry Canada, Ottawa. 2 nd Edition (1995)
URN	Items from Terminology of Forest Science: Technology Practice and Products are listed by Universal Reference Number (1971)

NOTE: Bolded words within definitions are also defined in the glossary.

Access

The **forest management** operations of road construction, road **maintenance**, and the use management of roads to provide access to the **forest** for the harvest of the forest resource, transport of those resources to wood processing facilities, and **forest management** renewal and **maintenance** activities.

Access control (roads)

The closure of a road to public travel or the restricted access to a road for certain specified uses for given periods of time. (Modified ARM)

Age class

One of the intervals into which the age range of **forest stands** is divided for classification and use. (Adapted URN 87)

Aggregate extraction area

An individual polygon depicting a known site of aggregate within 500 meters of an existing forest access road that is outside: an approved area of operations; an **operational road boundary**; a **primary road corridor**; or a **branch road corridor** where a **forestry aggregate pit** is planned to be established.

Analysis tool (forest)

A computer-based tool used to model, project, simulate or forecast data and information. Forest analysis tools are used in the development and evaluation of the **management direction** in a **forest management plan**.

Annual work schedule

Information which identifies the type and extent of **forest operations** to be carried out during one year, consistent with the **forest management plan**. (Adapted URN 4417)

Area charges

The charges to be paid in respect of the area under a **Forest Resource Licence**, as required by the **Crown Forest Sustainability Act**, the Regulations, and the licence.

Area of concern (AOC)

A geographic area established for an identified **value** that may be affected by **forest management** activities.

Area of operations

A geographic area comprised of individual, groups and/or portions of **forest stands** selected for **harvest**, **renewal** and **tending** operations for the ten-year period of a **forest management plan**.

Artificial regeneration

Renewal of a **forest**, by **seeding** or planting seedlings or cuttings. (STC)

Asset

Any construction that has cultural, recreational or social-economic value.

Biological diversity (syn: biodiversity)

The variety and variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and aquatic **ecosystems**, and the ecological complexes of which they a part. (OG)

Biodiversity: includes diversity within species, between species and of **ecosystems**. (CBS95)

Clearcut

Noun.

1. An area harvested under the clearcut **silvicultural system**.
2. An area of **forest** land from which all (or most) **merchantable** trees have recently been harvested.

Verb. To harvest the **merchantable** trees in an area, normally in one operation. (Modified STC)

Clearcut silvicultural system

A method of **harvesting** and regenerating an even-aged forest stand(s) in which new seedlings become established in fully exposed microenvironments after removal of all (or most) of the **merchantable** trees. **Regeneration** can originate naturally or artificially. Clearcutting may be done in blocks, strips, or patches. (Modified STC)

Conifer

Trees and shrubs belonging to the order Coniferales, usually evergreen with cones and needle-shaped leaves.

Conservation

Management of the human use of the biosphere so that it may yield the greatest sustainable benefit to present generations while maintaining its potential to meet the needs and aspirations of future generations, and includes the preservation, maintenance, sustainable utilization, restoration and enhancement of the **environment**. Modern conservation theory incorporates the notion that what is to be conserved is not so much the physical state of an ecological system as the ecological processes by which that state is created and maintained. (Aird)

Contingency area

Harvest areas identified and planned for, in the event that circumstances arise which cause selected **harvest areas** to be no longer **available** for operations. Contingency area will serve as replacement for selected **harvest areas** and will only be used if required.

Contingency plan

An interim **forest management plan** that is required when special circumstances affect the implementation of a **forest management plan**. An approved contingency plan permits the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current approved **forest management plan** and the approval for implementation of the renewed **forest management plan**.

Corridor

An area of uniform width bordering both or one side of a lineal feature such as a stream or route. (FITC)

Criteria

Harvest: A distinguishing set of characteristics that allows the identification of areas that are **eligible** for harvest, **renewal** and **tending** operations for the ten-year period of the **forest management plan**.

Sustainability: See criterion

Criterion

1. A criterion is characterized by a set of related **indicators** that are monitored periodically to assess change. (SFR 2001)
2. A category of conditions or processes by which **sustainable forest management** may be assessed. A criterion is characterized by a set of related **indicators** that are measured or assessed periodically to assess change.
3. A distinguishable characteristic of **sustainable forest management**; a value that must be considered in setting objectives and in assessing performance. (SFR 2001)

Crown forest sustainability act

An Act of the Ontario legislature to provide for the **sustainability** of **Crown forests** and, in accordance with that objective, to manage Crown forests to meet social, economic and environmental needs of present and future generations. (Modified CFSA)

Crown land

Land vested in His Majesty in right of Ontario.

Cutting cycle

The planned interval between partial harvests in an uneven-aged stand. (STC)

Decision support system

Information systems that utilize **analysis tools** (decision modules), databases and a decision maker's own insight in an interactive analytical modeling process to reach a specific decision.

Decommissioning (roads)

The physical work that will be undertaken to render the road impassable to vehicular traffic, enhance public safety and reduce potential environmental damage (e.g., removal of a water crossing(s), site preparation and regeneration).

Desired forest and benefits

The forest structure and composition and the goods and services, which are desired from the forest to achieve a balance of social, economic and environmental needs. The strategic and tactical planning decisions for the **management unit** are developed to achieve the desired forest and benefits.

Desirable level

The measurable amount for an **indicator**, expressed as a specific number, a range or a trend, used in the assessment of **sustainability**.

Disease

Harmful deviation from normal functioning of physiological processes, generally abiotic or biotic in origin. (STC)

Ecosite

An ecological **landscape** unit (ranging in resolution from thousands to hundreds of hectares) comprised of relatively uniform geology, parent materials, soils, topography and hydrology, occupied by a consistent complex of successional related vegetation conditions.

Ecosystem

The sum of the plants, animals, environmental influences and their interactions, within a particular **habitat**. (STC)

Environment

Has the same meaning as in the *Environmental Assessment Act*.

Exception

A **silvicultural treatment** in the **silvicultural ground rules** which differs from the recommendations in the applicable silvicultural **guide**, or an operational prescription or condition for an **area of concern** which differs from the specific direction or

recommendations (**standards** and **guidelines**) in the applicable forest management **guide**.

First Nation community

A First Nation community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with Part A, Section 3.1.1 of this manual.

Fish habitat

Spawning grounds and any other areas, including nursery, rearing, food supply and migration areas, on which fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their life processes.

Forest

1. (Ecology) A plant community predominantly of trees and other woody vegetation, growing more or less closely together (URN 2441).
2. (Silvicultural Management) An area managed for the production of **timber** and other forest products or maintained under woody vegetation for such indirect benefits as protection of site or for recreation (URN 2442).
3. (Forest Diversity) An aggregate of **forest stands**.

Forest cover

All of the trees as described by the **Forest Resources Inventory**.

Forest disturbance

A natural (e.g.; fire) or anthropogenic (e.g.; **timber** harvest) event in the forest that alters the natural **succession** of a **forest stand** or stands.

Forest dynamics

The natural processes involved in the development of a forest and associated with growth and changes to its structure and composition through time.

Forest ecosystem

An **ecosystem** in which trees are, or are capable of being, a major biological component. (CFSA)

Forest health

The condition of a **forest ecosystem** that sustains the **ecosystem's** complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario. (CFSA)

Forest management

Generally, the practical application of scientific, economic and social principles to the administration and working of a forest for specified **management objectives**; more particularly, that branch of forestry concerned with the overall administrative,

economic, legal and social aspects, and with the essentially scientific and technical aspects, especially **silviculture**, **protection** and forest regulation. (Aird)

Forest management plan

A document of that name prepared in accordance with the ***Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994***, for a **management unit** in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. A **forest management plan** sets out the **forest operations** that may occur on a **management unit** by a holder of a forest resource licence while having regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values. (CFSA)

Current plan: An approved **forest management plan** that is being implemented.

Past plan or previous plan: The expired **forest management plan** for the **plan period** immediately preceding the current plan.

Forest operations

The **harvesting** of a **forest resource**, the use of a **forest resource** for a designated purpose, or the **renewal** or **maintenance** of a **forest resource**, and includes all related activities. (CFSA)

Forest operations prescription

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, **renewal** and **maintenance** activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition.

Forest renewal trust

A Trust that provides for reimbursement of silvicultural expenses incurred after March 31, 1994, in respect of **Crown forests** in which **forest resources** have been harvested and for such other matters as may be specified by the Minister, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister. (CFSA, section 48)

Forest resource

Trees in a **forest ecosystem**, and any other type of plant life prescribed by the regulations that is in a **forest ecosystem**, (CFSA, section 3)

Forest resources inventory

A composite information product which is assembled from a collection of individual geographic information coverages that contain descriptive information about the **timber** resource on each **management unit** (e.g., stand age, stand height, species composition, stocking level). The forest resources inventory for a **management unit** divides the area into a number of components, such as water, non-forested, non-productive forest and **productive forest**, and further classifies each component by ownership/land use categories. (Adapted FIM)

Forest stand(s)

An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and uniform enough in composition (**species**), age and arrangement to be distinguishable from an adjacent aggregation of trees. (Modified MNR 1998)

Forest type

A general term to describe a group of forested areas or **forest stands** of similar composition. (Modified STC)

Forest unit

A classification system that aggregates **forest stands** for management purposes that will normally have similar species composition, will develop in a similar manner (both naturally and in response to **silvicultural treatments**), and will be managed under the same **silvicultural system**.

Forestry aggregate pit

An aggregate pit which is exempt from the requirement for an aggregate permit under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, as the criteria set out in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual are satisfied.

Forestry futures trust

A Trust that provides for the following matters, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister:

1. The funding of silvicultural expenses in **Crown forests** where **forest resources** have been killed or damaged by fire or natural causes.
2. The funding of silvicultural expenses on land that is subject to a forest resource licence, if the **licensee** becomes insolvent.
3. The funding of intensive stand management and pest control in respect of **forest resources** in Crown forests.
4. Such other purposes as may be specified by the Minister.

(CFSa Section 51(3))

Guide (forest management)

A Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry forest management guide described in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* and any forest management guide that is adopted by reference in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual*. Forest management guides provide direction for **forest management** practitioners that must be used in the development and implementation of **forest management plans**.

Guideline

A component of a **guide** that provides mandatory direction, but requires professional judgment for it to be applied appropriately at the local level. (MNR 2010)

Habitat

An area on which the **species** depends, directly or indirectly, to carry on its life processes including life processes such as reproduction, rearing, hibernation, migration, or feeding and includes places in the area that are used by members of the species as dens, hibernacula or other residences; or if the **species** is one for which a habitat regulation has been made under the ESA, the area prescribed by that regulation as the habitat for the **species**. (ESA)

Hardwood

Trees that have broad leaves, in contrast to the needle-bearing **conifers**. Also, the wood produced by broad leaved trees, regardless of texture or density.

Harvest area

Planned: The area (in hectares) for each **forest unit**, as determined in the development of the **management direction**, which serves as a limit for harvest area by **forest unit**, for the ten-year period of the **forest management plan**.

Contingency: see **Contingency area**

Eligible: The areas, as determined by **criteria** consistent with the **management direction** that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period.

Harvesting

The removal of forest products for utilization, comprising cutting and sometimes initial processing and extraction. (Adapted URN 2944)

Harvest method

A modification of one of the basic **silvicultural systems** which describes the harvest technique (e.g., *strip clearcut*, *group shelterwood*). (Modified FMPM 1996)

Harvest volume

Available: The estimated **volume** (in cubic metres) associated with the **Planned Harvest Area**, as determined in the development of the management direction.

Planned: The estimated **volume** (in cubic metres) associated with the **Planned Harvest Area**.

Utilized: The portion of the **Planned Harvest Volume** which is projected to be utilized to meet **Industrial Wood Requirements**.

Unutilized: The portion of the **Planned Harvest Volume**, which is in excess of the **Industrial Wood Requirements**, which remains available for use by the forest industry.

Herbicide

Any chemical preparation used to kill or inhibit the growth of forbs, grasses, woody plants, and their seeds. (STC)

Important ecological feature

A subset of natural resource attributes that are normally common and widespread, are often transitory, are rarely identified in advance of operations, and typically require minimal modifications to regular operations (e.g., Conditions on Regular Operations) to ensure they are maintained or protected. Important Ecological Features include, for example, wildlife trees, grouse nests, and ephemeral flows, seeps, and swales. Important Ecological Features may also include a **species at risk** or its **habitat**.

Independent forest audit

An independently led review, in accordance with O. Reg. 160/04 under the CFSA, of the adequacy of **forest management** practices, controls and processes to ensure that the management organization continues to be in control and in compliance with relevant legislation, policies and directives.

Indicator

A systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are identified in each **forest management plan** to assess the effectiveness of **forest management** activities in achieving **management objectives**, and to assess the **sustainability** of the forest.

Insecticide

Any chemical or biological preparation used to kill or disrupt the development of insects. (STC)

Landscape

A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is repeated in similar form throughout. (Forman)

A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate.

Licensee

A person or company to whom a **Forest resource licence** has been granted. (SM)

Local citizens' committee

An advisory committee of local citizens established under section 13 of the ***Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994***.

Logging method

A term which indicates the process used to move wood products from stump to roadside during a **harvesting** operation (e.g., full tree, tree length, shortwood).

Low volume stands

For clearcut silvicultural systems, threshold values of 45 m³/ha of marketable conifer and 65 m³/ha of all marketable species combined will be used as guidance, in particular where timber cruising is used to establish stand eligibility.

For selection or shelterwood silvicultural system, threshold values of 30 m³/ha of marketable timber marked for harvest, of which less than 30% is veneer and grade 1 sawlogs, will be used as guidance, in particular where timber cruising is used to establish stand eligibility.

Management direction

The strategic, tactical and operational planning components of a forest management plan, including management objectives, indicators, and levels of activities required to achieve the desired forest and benefits, which together provide for the sustainability of the forest.

Maintenance (forestry)

The **forest management** activities of **tending** and **protection**, which are carried out to ensure the survival and development of a forest to maturity.

Maintenance (roads)

Routine: Those activities necessary to maintain or upgrade a road and right of way for the traffic using it. Routine maintenance may include minor road re-alignment within the right of way.

Emergency: Road maintenance that requires immediate attention to restore access and reduce the chance of personal injury, damage to equipment, inconvenience to road users and further road damage (e.g., major washouts, blocked culverts, damaged bridges, etc.). (ARM)

Managed forest

Forests for which there is no legal or land use planning decision which prevents the land from being managed for **forest management** purposes.

Management objective

A statement of quantitative or qualitative desired future benefits or conditions, developed specifically for the **management unit**, that are to be achieved through the manipulation of **forest cover**.

Management standards

Describes the criteria used to evaluate the results of a partial harvest treatment when regeneration (establishment or release) is not the immediate and/or primary objective. Management standards (e.g., basal area retention, damage to residual stems) are typically applied to individual tree selection, irregular shelterwood (or portions of), shelterwood preparation cuts, and thinning. Management standards must be consistent with the associated desired future forest condition and treatment package.

Management unit

An area of **the forest** designated under section 7 of the ***Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994***.

Merchantable

Timber or a tree that is merchantable as defined in the Scaling Manual.

Métis community

A Métis community that is in or adjacent to the management unit as determined by the district manager in accordance with section 3.1.1 of this manual.

MNRF

MNRF means the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry, or the ministry of the Minister that has been assigned to undertake responsibility for the Crown Forest Sustainability Act.

Modified operations

Harvest, **renewal** and **tending** operations, where prescriptions have been developed to protect or manage specific **natural resource** features, land uses or **values**. Modified operations may be **regular operations** with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions to protect or manage specific **natural resource** features, land uses or **values**.

Monitoring

The collection and analysis of data over extended periods of time. It provides information on past and present ecological, social, cultural, and economic trends, and a basis for predictions about future conditions. (EALS)

Natural regeneration

Renewal of a forest, by natural **seeding**, sprouting, suckering or layering. (STC)

Natural resource

A renewable (forest, water, **wildlife**, soil, etc.) or non-renewable (oil, coal, iron, etc.) resource that is a natural asset. (Aird)

Old growth

A functional condition (e.g., stand productivity, nutrient cycling, and **wildlife habitat**) of a **forest ecosystem**, in a dynamic state, that embodies a set of physical features and characteristics that typically include:

1. a complex **forest stand** structure (e.g., old trees for the ecosite, large tree size and wide spacing, multiple canopy layers and gaps, and rates of change in species composition);
2. large dead standing trees (snags), accumulations of downed woody material, up-turned stumps, root and soil mounds, and accelerating tree mortality.

Operational prescription for areas of concern

An operational prescription for areas of concern is a prescription prepared for harvest, **renewal** and **tending** and **protection** activities to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of **forest management** operations on a natural resource feature, land use or **value**.

Operational road boundary

An operational road boundary includes the planned area of operations, and the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the planned area of operations within which an operational road is planned to be constructed. Operational road boundaries are intended to identify where operational roads may be constructed and should provide flexibility in operational road location where necessary (e.g., terrain limitations).

Ownership (land)

Classification of the provincial land base into the categories of Crown, patent and other vested interest.

Patented land

Land transferred from Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Ontario to an individual, company or corporation in perpetuity.

Pesticide

Any organism, substance or thing that is manufactured, represented, or sold or used as a means of directly or indirectly controlling, preventing, destroying, mitigating, attracting, or repelling any pest or of altering the growth, development or characteristics of any plant life that is not a pest and includes any organism, substance or thing registered under the *Pest Control Products Act* (Canada). (PA)

Plan amendment

Any change to a **forest management plan** or a **contingency plan** which is normally consistent with the **management direction** for the **management unit**. If there is a change to legislation and/or associated regulations a Ministry Regional Director, may request an amendment to a forest management plan or **contingency plan** that is not

consistent with the management direction. Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved **forest management plan** to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and First Nation and Métis community involvement and consultation.

Plan author

The **registered professional forester** licenced to practice professional forestry, under the *Professional Foresters Act*, 2000, who is responsible for the preparation and certification of a **forest management plan**. Where the original plan author of the **forest management plan** no longer has that responsibility, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

Plan period

The ten-year timeframe of a forest management plan for which **management direction** is established, and forest **sustainability** is determined.

Plan renewal

The time in the planning cycle marked by the approval of a **forest management plan**. **Forest management plans** are normally renewed every ten years.

Prescribed burn

The knowledgeable application of fire to a specific land area to accomplish predetermined forest management or other land use objectives. (STC)

Production forest

Productive forest land, at various stages of growth, with no obvious physical limitations on the ability to practice **forest management**.

Productive forest

All **forest** areas which are capable of growing commercial trees, irrespective of planning decisions.

Productivity

A change in biomass (volume) per unit area and time (**yield**, increment). (Kimmins)

Provincial forest type

An aggregation of **forest types** used to describe **forest cover** at broad planning levels. Provincial forest types are defined in the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy*.

Protection

Forest management operations which are carried out to prevent, control or manage the spread of, and/or the damage caused by insects and **diseases**. Protection may involve the use of **insecticides** or manual treatments.

Regeneration

The **renewal** of a **forest**, by natural or artificial means. This term may also be used to describe the young **forest** itself. (Adapted URN 4843, 4844, 4846, 4848)

Also see Artificial and **Natural regeneration**

Regeneration standard

The required level of observable measures of a regenerating area to provide confidence that the target (i.e., mature) stand condition can be achieved.

Region or regional

In this manual an administrative geographical unit of the Ministry of Natural Resources and Forestry.

Registered professional forester (R.P.F.)

A person licensed to practice professional forestry in Ontario, under the *Professional Foresters Act, 2000*

Regular operations

Harvest, **renewal** and **tending** operations conducted in accordance with the **silvicultural ground rules**.

Renewal

The silvicultural operations undertaken to stimulate and promote the establishment and growth of desired future **forest stands**, which may include the activities of **site preparation** and **regeneration**.

Reserve

An operational prescription for an **area of concern** where operations are prohibited.

Resource stewardship agreement

An agreement negotiated between a resource-based tourism operation as determined by the Ministry of Tourism, Culture and Sport, and a **sustainable forest licensee**.

Responsibility assignment (roads)

The party assigned responsibility for a road (and associated water crossings) (i.e., Ministry, **sustainable forest licensee**, other user).

Re-treatment

A specific **renewal** treatment (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that has been applied and usually occurs after a preliminary assessment has determined that further treatment is necessary.

Road

Primary: A road that provides principal access for the **management unit**, and is constructed, maintained and used as part of the main road system on the **management unit**. Primary roads are normally permanent roads.

Branch: A road, other than a primary road, that branches off an existing or new primary or branch road, providing access to, through or between areas of operations on a **management unit**.

Operational: A road within an **operational road boundary**, other than a primary or branch road, that provides short-term access for harvest, **renewal** and **tending** operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for **forest management** purposes and are often decommissioned and/or returned to productive land.

Road network

A system of new or existing roads that provide access to a distinct geographic area. (Adapted FRWCI)

Salvage harvest

The **harvesting** of **timber** that has been killed or damaged by natural causes, such as fire, wind, flood, insects and **disease**. (Modified FOSM)

SARO list

The Species at Risk in Ontario list set out in O. Reg. 230/08 made under the ESA.

Scarification

Mechanical loosening of the topsoil of open areas, or breaking up the forest floor, in preparation for **regeneration** by natural **seeding**. (Adapted URN 5134)

Seeding

A form of artificial regeneration which involves the scattering of seed, more or less evenly, over an area.

Seed orchard

A relatively small area, established with superior stock derived from selected parent material, and intensively managed to provide a sustained supply of genetically improved seed for use in an **artificial regeneration** program.

Selection silvicultural system

An uneven-aged **silvicultural system which involves** periodic partial harvests, controlled by basal area, using vigour and risk characteristics to determine individual tree selection. (MNR 1998)

Shelterwood silvicultural system

An even-aged **silvicultural system** where mature trees are harvested in a series of two or more cuts (preparatory, **regeneration**, removal) for the purpose of establishing **regeneration** under shelter of the residual trees, whether by cutting uniformly over the entire stand area or in narrow strips. **Regeneration** is natural or artificial. **Regeneration interval** determines the degree of even-aged uniformity. (Adapted MFM)

Also see **Silvicultural system**

Silvicultural ground rules

Specifications, **standards**, and other instructions, that direct silvicultural activities on a **management unit** during the period of the **forest management plan**.

Silvicultural stratum

An aggregation of **forest stands** for **forest management** purposes that are in the same **forest unit** yield curve.

Silvicultural system

A planned program of silviculture treatments that extends throughout the life of a stand for the purposes of controlling stand establishment, composition, and growth (Smith et al 1997) (MNRF 2015).

Silvicultural treatment

The method of harvest, renewal or **tending**, as identified in the **silvicultural ground rules**, through which a **forest operations prescription** will be met.

Silvicultural treatment package

A grouping of acceptable **silvicultural treatments** for the appropriate **forest unit** and **ecosite** combination which can be undertaken over time to achieve the desired future forest and benefits. (Modified MNR 1997)

Silviculture

Generally, the science and art of cultivating forest crops, based on a knowledge of silvics (URN 5384). More particularly, the theory and practice of controlling the establishment composition, constitution, and growth of forests (URN 5385).

Site preparation

Disturbance of the forest floor, topsoil, and/or competing vegetation, by mechanical or chemical means, or by **prescribed burning**, to create suitable conditions for natural or **artificial regeneration**. (Modified MFM)

Spatial

Dependent on, or associated with, a specific geographic location. Normally refers to information stored in a form or format that is directly usable by geographic information systems.

Spatial analyses

Use of spatial forest estate models to schedule proposed forest management activities (e.g., road construction and harvest) to meet the social, ecological, and economical objectives for the management unit.

Species

A singular or plural term for a population, or series of populations, of organisms that are capable of interbreeding freely with each other but not with members of other species. (Aird)

Species at risk

Any **species**, which is listed on the **SARO List**.

Stage of management

One in a series of harvest cuts performed over the life of a **forest stand**. The type and number of harvest cuts depends on the **silvicultural system** used.

Standard

A component of a **guide** that provides mandatory direction. (MNR 2010)

Stand improvement

The removal of trees to improve the composition and quality of a **forest stand**, generally used in the **selection silvicultural system**.

Silvicultural options

Broad groupings of **silvicultural treatments** that apply to the same initial forest conditions, achieve the same future forest conditions, require similar silvicultural expenditures and use the same growth projections and/or **yield** curves. Silvicultural options are used to represent **silvicultural treatments** during strategic analysis.

Succession

Changes in species composition in an **ecosystem** over time, often in a predictable order. (Aird)

Supplemental treatment

Regeneration treatments (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that are applied when initial regeneration efforts are not expected to meet the **regeneration standards**.

Supplementary documentation

The part of the **forest management plan** that contains the information that supports the decisions in the plan and summarizes the information used in the preparation of the plan. The format for the supplementary documentation includes text, tables and maps.

Sustainability

Long term **Crown forest health**. (CFSA)

Sustainable forest licence

A licence granted under Part III, section 26 of the ***Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994***.

Sustainable forest management

The management of **forest ecosystems** to maintain a healthy **forest ecosystem** which provides a continuous, predictable flow of benefits. **Indicators** of forest **sustainability criteria** are incorporated into strategic decision-making and into the periodic assessments of both forest and socioeconomic conditions. **Forest operations** are conducted in a manner that conserves **forest health** and minimizes undesirable effects on the physical and social environments.

Tending

Forest operations which are carried out to improve the growth or quality of a **forest**. **Tending** may involve cleaning (i.e., the removal of undesirable or competing vegetation through the use of **herbicides** or manual treatments), pre-commercial **thinning, stand improvement** or pruning.

Thinning

Thinning is a form of partial canopy removal in an established stand that concentrates potential wood production of a stand on selected trees (Smith et al 1997). Secondary objectives may include compositional objectives or developing future seed producing crowns. Thinning may be used to influence wood quality and quantity and achieve specific management objectives (habitat, aesthetics, watershed management, etc).

Commercial thinning: A thinning in which the harvested trees are removed from the site and used for commercial purposes.

Pre-commercial thinning: A thinning that does not yield trees of commercial value and is usually designed to improve crop spacing. (Modified STC) In Ontario, the term pre-commercial thinning is generally used in relation to even-aged management only. Pre-commercial thinning in uneven-aged management is referred to as "improvement cutting" or **stand improvement**.

Timber

A wood material yielded by trees.

Tree improvement

The control of parentage, combined with specific **silvicultural treatments** (e.g., **tending**) to improve the overall **yield** and quality of **timber** from **forest stands**.

Undersize and defect

Timber or a tree that is not **merchantable**, including undersize material and defects, as defined in the Scaling Manual.

Use management strategy (road)

An approach outlining the purpose and description, and defining the roles and responsibilities related to use, **maintenance**, use control, **decommissioning** and **monitoring** of roads on **Crown land**.

Value

A term used to describe known natural, cultural or First Nation or Métis resource attribute or use of land, including all lakes and streams, which must be considered in forest management planning.

Volume

The amount of wood in a tree, **forest stand**, or other specified area, recorded by a unit of measure.

Wetland

Land that is seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as land where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case, the presence of abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the dominance of either hydrophytic or water-tolerant plants. The four major types of wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. (*Wetlands Policy*)

Wildlife

Normally includes all wild mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians.

Wood storage yard

There are two types of wood storage yards: temporary holding yards and merchandizing yards.

Temporary holding yards for forest resources are storage sites which are removed from the harvesting location (i.e., outside of the original active harvest block). These yards are generally used annually for the short-term storage of forest resources prior

to movement to the final processing destination. Wood from more than one license and/or Harvest Approval area may be stored at these sites.

Merchandizing yards are sites which are also removed from the harvesting location. These yards may be temporary or long-term and are used for slashing, sorting, log improvement and wood measurement activities, as applicable, that occur prior to delivery to the final processing destinations. Forest resources from more than one license and/or Harvest Approval area may be processed at these sites.

Wood storage sites do not include piling of timber at roadside adjacent to active forest operations.

Yield

The actual or estimated amount of product from a tree or a **forest stand**, or other specified area.